

THE 16^d
RUDIMENTS
OF THE 20
Latin Tongue,
OR
A plain and easy Introduction
TO
Latin Grammar;

Wherein
The PRINCIPLES of the LANGUAGE
are Methodically digested both in
ENGLISH and LATIN:

WITH
Useful NOTES and Observations, explaining the TERMS of GRAMMAR,
and further improving its RULES.

By THO. RUDDIMAN, M. A.

K.

EDINBURGH,

Printed by Mr. ROBERT FREEBAIRN, Printer to the KING's Most Excellent Majesty.
M.DCC.XIV.

E R R A T A:

Dage 26, l. 19, for III. read II. l. 22, r. III. l. 33. r. IV. p. 32, l.
26, dele I. p. 42, l. 18, r. qualis. p. 44, l. 37, r. Page 52. p. 67,
30, before Note, &c. insert, A PREPOSITION is an indeclinable Word
ewing the Relation of one Substantive Noun to another. p. 78, l. ult. a-
m or ameth. p. 90, l. 10, r. Page 85. p. 103, l. 23, r. does not b-
e, r. cap. 69.

The Preface.

MONG the several Instructors of Youth in this Nation many have for a long Time complained that the two *Rudiments* of the *Latin Tongue* commonly taught in our Schools are many Ways insufficient in Respect to the End proposed by them ; That the one is written wholly in *Latin*, the very Language it is designed to teach ; That the other is defective, particularly in the *Syntax* ; And that the *Rules* of both are often obscure and intricate, and sometimes false and erroneous. Whereupon some knowing Masters of that Profession, by their repeated Sollicitations, prevailed with me to undertake the Compiling of a new *Rudiments*, which they conceived might in a great Measure be freed from the Faults and Defects of the former, and so contrived as to bring down its *Rules* to the Level of a Boy's Capacity, and make them enter with more Ease and Familiarity into his

his Mind. This is the End I have had in View : With what Success it has been prosecuted, is a Province for others not me to determine. However, if any thing inclines me to hope its Acceptance in the World, it is owing to the kind Assistance I have had from Time to Time of the above mentioned & other Gentlemen, as the Duty of their respective Employments would permit them. What discouraged me most in this Undertaking was the different Opinions of *Grammarians*, with the sharp Contests and Disputes they have had about the Method of Instruction, and the most proper Way to communicate the *Latin Tongue* to others with the greatest Facility and Expedition. It would be almost an endless Task to reckon up the various *Schemes* that have been projected for that Purpose. Therefore I shall engage no farther in this Subject, than as it seems necessary to give my Reader a clear and distinct View of the Reasons that determined me to the Method I have followed.

I have long observed, that those of our Country, whose Business it is to direct the Studies of Youth, are greatly divided about what an *Introduction to Latin Grammar* ought properly to contain, and in what Language its Precepts should be conveyed.

in
ro-
to
es
t is
om-
her
ive
nat
was
ith
ive
nd
the
Fa-
ost
ous
nat
her
to
ew
the
un-
the
a
m-
in
on-
cy.
veyed. Some are for contracting it into
so narrow Limits as is possible, and not
to burthen the Memory of the Learner with
any thing but what is essential and absolutely
necessary: While others contend that this is
too general, and not sufficient to direct his
Practice, without the Addition of more par-
ticular Rules. Again, tho' the greater Part
incline to have the first Principles of Gram-
mar communicated in a known Language,
there are not a few, and of these some Per-
sons of Distinction, who are still for retain-
ing them in *Latin*, which, tho' attended at
first with more Difficulty, makes (in their
Judgment) a more lasting Impression on the
Mind, and carries the Learner more direct-
ly to the Habit of speaking *Latin*, a Practice
much used in our Schools. It appeared next
to an Impossibility to satisfy so many diffe-
rent Opinions: However, the Method I have
taken seems to bid fairest for it. For I have
reduced the Substance of these Rudiments into
a Sort of *Text*, and have given the *Latin*
an *English Version*, leaving the Master to his
own Choice and Discretion which to use. And
that none may complain that the *Text* is
too compendious, I have subjoined large Notes,
which I humbly conceive will supply that
Defect.

To

To render my Design of more general Use,
I was obliged to fall in with this Expedient,
which has produced one Inconvenience, namely
that the Book is thereby swelled to a much
greater Bulk than I could have wished, or
some perhaps will excuse, tho' the Reasons
are so obvious that it is needless to relate them.
I confess I have been larger in the *Notes* than
the Nature of a *Rudiments* seemed to require.
But, as I presume there is nothing in them
but what may be useful either to Master or
Scholar, and since it was never my Intention
that they should be all taught, or any of them
with the same Care as the *Essential Parts*, I
thought they might the more easily be dis-
pensed with. There is one thing more which
has considerably increased them, viz. the
Remarks I have added on *English Nouns*, *Pro-*
nouns and *Verbs*; which I judged useful on a
double Account: *First*, as they serve to illus-
trate *Latin Grammar*, the first Notions and
Impressions whereof we receive from the
Language we our selves speak. *Secondly*, be-
cause the greater Number of those who are
taught the *Latin Tongue* reap little other
Benefit from it, than as it enables them to
speak and write *English* with the greatest
Exactness, I supposed it would not be
amiss to throw in something in order to that
End.

Having

Having thus given a general *Plan* of my Undertaking, all I shall say of the particular Management of it is, that I have laboured all along to render every thing as plain and easy as I possibly could, considering with tender Regard for whose Benefit it is designed. I have consulted the best Grammarians both Ancient and Modern, and have borrowed from them whatever I conceived fit for my Purpose; tho not contenting myself with their bare Authority, I frequently had Recourse to the Fountain it self, I mean the purest Writers of the *Latin Tongue*. As thus I have been sollicitous to avoid Error, so I have been cautious not to incur the Censure of having affected *Novelty*, and therefore have receded no farther from the common *Systems* than I think they have receded from Truth; retaining the usual *Terms* of Art, which have so long obtained in the Schools, tho sometimes I have taken the Liberty, as I saw Occasion for it, to explain them my own Way. That I might lay no more Weight on the Memories of Children than they could well bear, I have reduced the *Rules* to as small a Number as the Subject would allow of, and conceived them in as few Words as was consistent with Perspicuity, leaving it to the Industry of the Teacher

Teacher to explain them more fully, as he shall find necessary, without which no Rules can be sufficient. The Syntax is indeed longer than was to be wished; but I frankly own that I do not see how it can be made much shorter without either confounding its Order, or leaving out the *Elliptical Rules*. However to remove the Objection as much as I could I have subjoined a more Compendious Syntax consisting only of a few Fundamental Rules which may be taught alone, or before the other, as the Judgment and Discretion of the Master shall direct him.

His picture, less vivid, is to the imagination of the few words as was consecutive with the few words of any conceivable history in the world. It will be difficult to find a better example of the power of language than the picture which I have given of the life of Jesus. The picture is not perfect, but it is true, and it is full of life and interest. The picture is not perfect, but it is true, and it is full of life and interest.

A plain and easy Introduction
to the Rudiments
of the Latin Tongue,
OR
RUDIMENTS
OF THE
Latin Tongue.

A plain and easy Introduction

Latin Grammar.

PARS PRIMA.

De Literis & Syllabus.

Magister.

*Q*UOT sunt Literae appd. Latinos?

*D*iscipulus. Quinque & viginti, scilicet, a, e, i, o, u, y, v, x, z.

*M*agister. Quomodo dividantur?

*D*iscipulus. In Vocales & Consonantes.

*M*agister. Quot sunt Vocales?

*D*iscipulus. Sex; a, e, i, o, u, y.

PART FIRST.

Of Letters and Syllables.

*M*aster.

*H*ow many Letters are there in the Latin Tongue?

*S*cholar. F*if* we consider them all, there are twenty-five.

*M*aster. *But* if we consider them *properly*, there are twenty-two.

*S*cholar. *Properly* there are twenty-two.

*M*aster. *Properly* there are twenty-two.

*S*cholar. *Properly* there are twenty-two.

*M*aster. *Properly* there are twenty-two.

*S*cholar. *Properly* there are twenty-two.

2 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue, Part I.

M. Quot sunt Consonantes?

D. Novemdecim; b, c, d, f, g, h, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, z, u, x, ȳ.

M. Quot sunt Diphthongi?

D. Quinque; ae, [vel e,] oe, [vel e,] au, eu, ei; ut, ae-
tas, vel aetas, poena, vel pena,
audio, euge, hei.

M. How many Consonants are there?

S. Nineteen; b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.

M. How many Diphthongs are there?

S. Five; ae, [or e,] oe, [or e,] au, eu, ei; as, aetas, or ae-
tas, poena, or pena, audio,
euge, hei.

N O T E S.

GRAMMAR is The Art of speaking any Language rightly, as Hebrew, Greek, Latin, English, &c.

Latin Grammar is The Art of speaking rightly the Latin Tongue.

The RUDIMENTS of that Grammar are Plain and easy Instructions, teaching Beginninges the first Principles or the most common and necessary Rule of Latin.

The Rudiments may be reduced to these four Heads. I. Treating of Letters. II. Of Syllables. III. Of Words. IV. Of Sentences.

These are naturally made up of one another; for one or more Letters make a Syllable, one or more Syllables make a Word, and two or more Words make a Sentence.

A Letter is A Mark or Character representing an uncomponed Sound.

X, Y, Z are only to be found in Words originally Greek, and H by some is not accounted a Letter but a Breathing.

We reckon the J called *Jot* [or Je,] and the V called *Vau*, two Letters di-
fined from I and U, because not only their Figures, but their Powers or Sounds
are quite different; J sounding like G before E, and V almost like F.

A Vowel is A Letter that makes a full and perfect Sound by it self.

A Consonant is A Letter that cannot sound without a Vowel.

A Syllable is Any one compleat Sound.

There can be no Syllable without a Vowel: And any of the six Vowels alone, or any Vowel with one or more Consonants before or after it, makes a Syllable.

There are for the most part as many Syllables in a Word as there are Vowels in it. Only there are two Kinds of Syllables in which it is otherwise, viz. 1. When U with any other Vowel comes after G, Q, or S, as in *lingua*, *qui-
suades*; where the Sound of the U vanishes, or is little heard. 2. When two
Vowels join to make a Diphthong, or Double Vowel.

A Diphthong is A Sound compounded of the Sounds of two Vowels, so as both of them are heard.

Of Diphthongs three are Proper, viz. au, eu, ei, in which both Vowels are heard; and two Improper, viz. e, o, in which the e and o are not heard, but they are pronounced as simple.

Some, not without reason, to these five Diphthongs add other three; as, ai in *Alia*, ui in *Tria*, ȳ or ȳi in *Harpia* or *Harpiae*.

PARS SECUNDA. PART SECOND.

De Dictionibus.

M. **Q**uo^t sunt Partes
Orationis?

D. Octo; Nomen, Pronomen,
Verbum, Participium;
Adverbium, Praepositio, Interjectione,
Conjunctio.

M. Quomodo dividuntur?

D. In Declinabiles & Indeclinabiles.

M. Quot sunt Declinabiles?

D. Quatuor; Nomen, Pronomen,
Verbum, Participium.

M. Quot sunt Indeclinabiles?

D. Item quatuor; Adverbium,
Praepositio, Interjectione,
Conjunctio.

Of Words.

M. **H**ow many Parts of
Speech are there?

S. Eight; Noun, Pronoun,
Verb, Participle; Adverb,
Preposition, Interjection,
Conjunction.

M. How are they divided?

S. Into Declinable and Indeclinable.

M. How many are Declinable?

S. Four; Noun, Pronoun,
Verb, Participle.

M. How many are Indeclinable?

S. Likewise four; Adverb,
Preposition, Interjection,
Conjunction.

A WORD [*Vox* or *Diccio*] is one or more Syllables joined together, which Men have agreed upon to signify something.

Words are commonly reduced to eight Classes, called Parts of Speech: But some comprise them all under three Classes, viz. Noun, Verb, and Adverb. Under Noun, they comprehend also Pronoun and Participle; and under Adverb, also Preposition, Interjection and Conjunction. Others to these add a fourth Class, viz. Adoun, comprehending Adjectives under it, and restricting Nouns to Substantives only. These by some are otherwise called Names, Qualities, Affirmations, and Particles.

The Declinable Parts of Speech are so called, because there is some Change made upon them, especially in their last Syllables: And this is what we call Declension, or Declining of Words. But the Indeclinable Parts continue unchangeably the same.

The last Syllable on which these Changes do fall, is called the Ending or Termination of a Word.

These Changes are made by what Grammarians call Accidentia, i. e. The Accidents of Words.

These Accidents are commonly reckoned Six, viz. Gender, Case, Number, Mood, Tense and Person. Of these Gender and Case are peculiar to three of the Declinable Parts of Speech, viz. Noun, Pronoun and Participle; and Mood, Tense and Person are peculiar to one of them, viz. Verb: And Number is common to them all.

NOTE 1. That Person may also be said to belong to Noun or Pronoun: But then it is not properly an Accident, because no Change is made by it in the Word.

Rudiments of the Latin Tongue.

NOTE. — There is no Name, species and distinction, which come under Accidence, and do not properly come under that Name, because the Word is of different origin from what they had before. See Chap. IX.

NOTE. — All the Changes that happen to a Noun, Pronoun and Participle, are in a general sense called Declension or Declination of them; and the Changes that happen in a Verb are called Conjugation.

C A P . I.

De Nominis.

M. **Q**uomodo declinatur Nomen?

D. **P**er Genera, Casus, & Numeros.

M. Quot sunt Genera?

D. **T**ria; Masculinum, Femininum & Neuterum.

M. Quot sunt Casus?

D. **S**ex; Nominativus, Genitivus, Dativus, Accusativus, Vocativus & Ablativus.

M. Quot sunt Numeri?

D. **D**uo; Singularis & Pluralis.

M. Quot sunt Declinationes?

D. **Q**uinq[ue]; Prima, Secunda, Tertia, Quarta & Quinta.

REGULÆ GENERALES.

1. Nomina neutri generis habent Nominativum, Accusativum & Vocativum similes in utroque Numero; & in casus in Plurali semper diffinentur in eis.

2. Vocativus in Singulare

C H A P . I.

Of Noun.

M. **H**ow is a Noun declined?

S. By Genders, Cases and Numbers.

M. How many Genders are there?

S. Three; Masculine, Feminine and Neuter.

M. How many Cases are there?

S. Six; Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative and Ablative.

M. How many Numbers are there?

S. Two; Singular and Plural.

M. How many Declensions are there?

S. Five; First, Second, Third, Fourth and Fifth.

GENERAL RULES.

1. Nouns of the Neuter Gender have the Nominative, Accusative and Vocative alike in both Numbers; And these Cases in the Plural end almost all in a.

2. The Vocative for the plural

Part II. Chap. I. of NOUNS.

plerumque in Plural semper in the Singular, Tunc etiam
per se similis Nominative. — ways in the Plural is like the
Nominative.

3. **Dativus & Ablativus**
Pluralis sunt similes.

4. **Nomina propria** plerumque parent Plurali.

3. The Dative and Abla-
tive Plural are alike.

4. Proper Names for the most
part want the Plurals.

A NOUN is That Part of Speech which signifies the Name or Quality
of a Thing; as, *Homo*, a Man; *Bonus*, good.

A Noun is either Substantive or Adjective.

A Substantive Noun is That which signifies the Name of a Thing; as, *Albus*,
Tree; *Virtus*, Virtue; *Bonitas*, Goodness.

An Adjective Noun is That which signifies an Accident, Quality or Property
of a Thing; as, *Albus*, white; *Felix*, happy; *Gravis*, heavy.

A Substantive may be distinguished from an Adjective these two Ways.

1. A Substantive can stand in a Sentence without an Adjective, but an Adjective
cannot without a Substantive; as, I can say, *A Stone falls*, but cannot say, *A Heavy falls*. — If the Word *Thing* be joined with *Substantive* in a Grammatical Sense; but if it be joined with a Substantive, it will make *Adjective*; thus we say, *A good Thing*, *A white Thing*; but we do not say, *A Man thing*, *A Beast thing*.

2. A Substantive Noun is divided into Proper and Appellative.

A Proper Substantive is That which agrees to one particular Thing or Kind,
as, *Virgilius*, a Man's Name; *Penelope*, a Woman's Name; *Scotia*, Scotland;
Edimburgum, Edinburgh; *Tans*, Tay.

An Appellative Substantive is That which is common to a whole Kind of
Things; as, *Vir*, a Man; *Femina*, a Woman; *Regnum*, a Kingdom; *Urbis*,
a City; *Fluvius*, a River.

NOTE, That when a proper Name is applied to many it becomes an Appel-
lative; as, *Duodecim Cesares*, the twelve Caesars.

GENDER in a natural Sense is the Distinction of Sex, or the Difference
between Male and Female. But in a Grammatical Sense we commonly under-
stand by it The Fitness that a Substantive Noun hath to be joined to an Adje-
tive of such a Termination, and not of another. Therefore,

Of Names of Animals the *Hees* are of the Masculine, and the *Shee* of the
Feminine Gender: But of Things without Life, and where the Diversity of Sex
is not considered, even of Things that have Life, some are of the Masculine,
others of the Feminine, and others of the Neuter Gender, according to the Use
of the best Authors of the Latin Tongue.

Besides these three principal Genders, there are reckoned also other three less
Principal, which are nothing else but Compounds of the three former, viz.
The Gender Common to two, the Gender Common to three, and the Doubtful
Gender.

I. The Common Gender, or Gender common to two, [Genus commune, or
Commune duum] is Masculine and Feminine; and belongs to such Nouns as do
agree to both Sexes: As, *Patens*, a Father or Mother; *Bos*, an Ox or Cow.

II. The Gender common to three, [Genus commune trium] is Masculine, Fe-
minine and Neuter, and belongs only to Adjectives; whereof some have three
Terminations, the first Masculine, the second Feminine, and the third Neut.

6 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

ter; as, *Bopus*, *bona*, *bonum*, good. Some have two, the first Masculine and Feminine, and the third Neuter; as, *Mollis*, *molle*, soft. And some have but one Termination, which agrees indifferently to any of the three Genders, as *Prudens*, wise.

III. The Doubtful Gender [*Genus dubium*] belongs to such Nouns as are found in good Authors sometimes in one Gender, and sometimes in another; as, *Dies*, a Day, Mascul. or Femin. *Vulgus*, the Rabble, Mascul. or Neut.

[We have excepted out of the Number of Genders the Epicene or Promiscuous Gender; for properly speaking there is no such Gender distinct from the three chief ones, or the Doubtful. There are indeed Epicene Nouns, that is, some Names of Animals in which the Distinction of Sex is either not at all, or very obscurely considered; and these are generally of the Gender of their Termination; as, *Aquila*, an Eagle, Femin. because it ends in *a*; *Passer*, a Sparrow, Mascul. because it ends in *er*, [see page 8 and 11:] So *Homo*, a Man or Woman, Mascul. *Mancipium*, a Slave, Neut. *Anguis*, a Serpent, Doubtful.]

To distinguish these Genders, we make use of these three Words, *Hic*, *hic*, *hoc*, which are commonly, tho' improperly, called *Articles*. *Hic* is the Sign of the Masc. *hic* of the Fem. *hoc* of the Neut. Gender; *hic* & *hoc* of the Common to two; *hic*, *hoc* of the Common to three; *hic aut hic*; *hic aut hoc*, *Sac.* of the Doubtful.

By *CASES* we understand the different Terminations that Nouns receive in declining; so called from *cado*, to fall, because they naturally fall or flow from the Nominative, which is therefore called *CASUS RECTUS*, the straight Case; as the other five are named *Obliqui*, crooked.

The Singular *NUMBER* denotes one single Thing; as, *Homo*, a Man; the *Plural* denotes more Things than one; as, *Homines*, Men.

¶ Before the Learner proceed to the Declension of Latin Nouns, it may not perhaps be improper to give him a general View of

The Declension of English Nouns.

I. The English Language hath the two Genders of Nature, viz. Masculine and Feminine; for Animals in it are called *HE* or *SHE*, according to the Difference of their Sex: And almost every Thing without Life is called *IT*. But because all the Adjectives of this Language are of one Termination, it has no Occasion for any other Genders.

II. The English properly speaking has no Cases, because there is no Alteration made in the Words themselves, as in the Latin; but instead thereof we use some little Words called *PARTICLES*.

Thus, The *Nominative Case* is the simple Noun it self: The Particle *OF* put before it, or 's after it makes the *Genitive*: *TO* or *FOR* before it makes the *Dative*: The *Accusative* is the same with the *Nominative*: The *Vocative* hath *O* before it: And the *Ablative* hath *WITH*, *FROM*, *IN*, *BY*, &c.

NOTE 1. That when a Substantive comes before a Verb it is called the *Nominative*; when it follows after a Verb Active, without a Preposition intervening, it is called the *Accusative*.

NOTE 2. That the Apostrophus, or Sign ['] is not used in the Genitive Plural; as, *Mens Works*, *the Apostles Creed*.

NOTE 3. That *TO* the Sign of the *Dative*, and *O* of the *Vocative* are frequently omitted or understood.

Beside

Part II. Chap. I. of NOUNS.

9

Besidesthese there are other two little Words called ARTICLES, which are commonly put before Substantive Nouns, viz. *A* [or *AN* before a Vowel or *H*] called the Indefinite Article, and *THE* called the Definite.

A or *AN* signifies as much as the Adjective One, and is put for it; as, *A Man*, that is, one *Man*. *The* is a Pronoun, and signifies almost the same with *This*, or *That*, and *These*.

NOTE 1. That proper Names of Men, Women, Towns, Kingdoms, and Appellatives when used in a very general Sense, have none of these Articles; as, *Man* is *Mortal*, i. e. every *Man*; *God abhors Sin*, i. e. all Sins: But proper Names of Rivers, Ships, Hills, &c. frequently have *The*; as, *The Thames*, *The Britannia*, *The Alps*.

NOTE 2. That the Vocative has none of these Articles, and the Plural wants the Indefinite.

NOTE 3. That when an Adjective is joined with a Substantive, the Article is put before both; as, *A good Man*, *The good Man*: And the Definite is put before the Adjective when the Substantive is understood; as, *The just shall live by Faith*, i. e. *The just Men*.

III. The English hath two Numbers as the Latin, and the Plural is commonly made by putting an *s* to the Singular; as, *Book*, *Books*.

Exc. 1. Such as end in *sh*, *ch*, *ss*, and *ss*; which have *s* added to their Singular; as, *Church-es*, *Brush-es*, *Wines-es*, *Box-es*. Where 'tis to be noticed that such Words have a Syllable more in the Plural, than in the Singular Number. Which likewise happens to all Words ending in *ce*, *ge*, *se*, *ze*; as, *Faces*, *Ages*, *Houses*, *Mazes*. The Reason of this proceeds from the near Approach these Terminations have in their Sound to an *s*, so that their Plural could not be distinguished from the Sing. without the Addition of another Syllable. And for the same reason Verbs of these Terminations have a Syllable added to them in their 3d Person Sing. of the present Tense.

Exc. 2. Words that end in *f* or *fe*, have their Plural in *vess*; as, *Calf*, *Calves*; *Leaf*, *Leaves*; *Wife*, *Wives*: But not always; for *Hoof*, *Roof*, *Grief*, *Mischief*, *Dwarf*, *Strife*, *Muff*, &c. retain *f*. *Staff* has *Staves*.

Exc. 3. Some have their Plural in *ens*; as, *Man*, *Men*; *Woman*, *Womens*; *Child*, *Children*; *Chick*, *Chickens*; *Brother*, *Brothers*; or *Brethren*; (which last is seldom used but in Sermons, or in a Burlesque Sense.)

Exc. 4. Some are more irregular; as, *Die*, *Dice*; *Mouse*, *Mice*; *Louse*, *Lice*; *Goose*, *Geese*; *Foot*, *Feet*; *Tooth*, *Teeth*; *Penny*, *Pence*; *Sow*, *Sows* and *Swine*; *Cow*, *Cows* and *Kine*.

Exc. 5. Some are the same in both Numbers; as, *Sheep*, *Hose*, *Swine*, *Chicken*, *Pease*, *Deer*; *Fish* and *Fishes*, *Mile* and *Miles*, *Horse* and *Horses*.

NOTE. That as Nouns in *y* do often change *y* into *ie*, so those have rather *ies* than *y's* in the Plural; as, *Cherry*, *Cherries*.

An English Noun is thus declined.

A, The

<i>Nom.</i> <i>Gen. of</i> <i>Dat. to [for]</i> <i>Acc.</i> <i>Voc. O</i> <i>Abl. with, from, in, by</i>	<i>King,</i> <i>King,</i> <i>King,</i> <i>King,</i> <i>King,</i> <i>King:</i>	<i>Nom.</i> <i>Gen. of</i> <i>Dat. to [for]</i> <i>Acc.</i> <i>Voc. O</i> <i>Abl. with, from, in, by</i>	<i>Kings,</i> <i>Kings,</i> <i>Kings,</i> <i>Kings,</i> <i>Kings,</i> <i>Kings:</i>

Primer

Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

Prima Declinatio.

M. **Q**uemodo dignoscitur Prima Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum & Dativum singularem in a diphtongon.

M. Quot habet Terminations?

D. Quatuor; a, e, as, es;

Penna, Penelope, Aeneas, Aeneides.

Penna, a Pen, Rem.

Sing.

Nom. penna, *a* pen. Gen. pennæ, of *a* pen.

Dat. pennæ, to *a* pen. Acc. pennam, *a* pen.

Voc. penna. O pen. Abl. penna, *with* a pen.

The First Declension.

M. **H**ow is the First Declension known?

S. By the Genitive and Dative singular in a Diphtong.

M. How many Terminations hath it?

S. Four; a, e, as, es; As,

Penna, Penelope, Aeneas, Aeneides.

Penna, a Pen, Rem.

Plur.

Nom. pennæ, *a* pens. Gen. pennarum, of pens.

Dat. pennarum, to pens. Acc. pennas, *a* pens.

Voc. pennæ, O pens. Abl. pennis, *with* pens.

After the same manner you may decline Litera, a Letter,

Way, Gales, an Helmet; Tunica, a Coat, Toga, a Gown.

A is a Latin Termination, *a*, *as* and *es* are Greek.
Nouns in *a* and *e* are Feminine, in *as* and *es* Masculine.

RULE. *Filia*, a Daughter, *Nata*, a Daughter, *Dea*, a Goddess, *Anima*, the Soul, with some others, have more frequently *abus* than *a*, in their Dat. and Abl. Plur. so differing from them from Masculines in *us* of the Second Declension.

In declining Greek Nouns observe the following Rules.

1. Greek Nouns in *as* [and *a*] have sometimes their Accusative [with the Post] in *as* as, *Aeneas*, *Aeneas* vel *Aenean*.

2. Those however have their Accusative in *es*, and their Vocative and Ablative in *e*: *Anchise*.

Nom. Anchises, *a* Anchise. Accus. Anchisen, *a* Anchisen. Ablat. Anchise.

3. Nouns in *e* have their Genitive cases, their Accusat. in *es*, their Dative, Vocative and Ablative in *et*.

Nom. Penelope, *a* Penelope. Gen. Penelopes, *a* Penelopes.

Dat. Penelope, *a* Penelope. Acc. Penelopen, *a* Penelopen.

Abr. Penelope.

At the Duties of Words in *Latin* there followed Probus and Priscian among the Ancients; Lilly, Alairus, Voynus, Meilleurs de Port Royal, Johnson, &c. in the Moderns. To which I might add none of them cite, nor do I remember to have seen any Examples. But Probus and Despauter seem'd to be of Opinion

Part II. Chap. I. of Nouns.

that these Nouns have α in their Native. The Reason that made the former do it, because they thought it incongruous, that seeing Nouns in α generally follow the Greek in all their other Cases, they should follow the Latin in their Declination; especially since their Ablative, which answers to the Greek Dative, ends in α ; so on the contrary, they maintain, that if such Nouns have α in their Native, it will come from a Nonnative idea, of which there are some Examples you cannot deny; and then they may likewise have their Accusative in α , as, Peleoponnesus, the name in Play us, Lycambus in Terentius, Maurus. These Helenas or Helenes, Helenam or Helenen, are frequently to be met with in Poets; who often turn such Words as commonly end in α , into e in the Nominative and Vocative; when the Measure of their Verse requires it. And here it may not be improper to remark, that even Greek Words in α have sometimes their Nominative and Vocative in a , (whence comes their Genitive & Dative in α :) And, if Mr. Johnson's Citations are right, both e and a have sometimes their Accusative in α .

Secunda Declinatio.

M. Q[uod] uomodo dignoscitur Secunda Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum singularem in i , & Dativum in o .

M. Quot habet Terminatus?

D. Septem; et, ir, ill, m, im, or, on, ut.

The second Declension.

M. How is the Second Declension known?

S. By the Genitive singular in i , and Dative in o .

M. How many Terminatus hath it?

S. Seven; et, ir, ill, m, im, or, on, ut.

Genus a Son-in-Law; Pn, a Man; Satur, soil; Dom, Lord; Regnum, a Kingdom; Synodus, a Syndic; Albion, the Island Albion, or Great Britain.

Gener, a Son-in-Law. Male.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom. gener,	Nom. generis,	
Gen. generi,	Gen. generorum,	
Dat. genero,	Dat. generis,	
Acc. generum,	Acc. generos,	
Voc. gener,	Voc. generis,	
Abl. genero,	Abl. generis,	

After this same manner you may decline the following Nouns.

1. a Man. Ex. But, a Man.

2. a Woman. Ex. But, a Woman.

Rudiments of the Latin Tongue;

Dominus, a Lord, Masc.

Sing.	Plur.	Thus
Nom. dominus,	Nom. domini,	Ventus, the Wind.
Gen. domini,	Gen. dominorum,	Oculus, the Eye.
Dat. domino,	Dat. dominis,	Fluvius, a River.
Acc. dominum,	Acc. dominos,	Puteus, a Well.
Voc. domine,	Voc. domini,	Focus, a common Fire.
Abl. domino:	Abl. dominis.	Rogus, a funeral Pillar.

Regnum, a Kingdom, Neut.

Sing.	Plur.	Thus
Nom. regnum,	Nom. regna,	Templum, a Church.
Gen. regni,	Gen. regnorum,	Ingenium, Wit.
Dat. regno,	Dat. regnis,	Horreum, a Barn.
Acc. regnum,	Acc. regna,	Canticum, a Song.
Voc. regnum,	Voc. regna,	Jugum, a Yoke.
Abl. regno:	Abl. regnis.	

REGULÆ.

I. Nominativus in *us* facit Vocativum in *e*; ut, *Ventus*, *Vente*.

II. Propria in *ius* perdunt *us* in Vocativo; ut, *Georgius*, *Georgi*.

Filius also hath *fili*, and *Dœus* hath *Dœus* in the Vocative and in the Plural more frequently *Dii* and *Diu*, than *Dœ* and *Deis*.

The most common Terminations of the Second Declension are *er* and *us* the Masc. and *um* of the Neuter Gender.

There are only three Nouns in *ir* of this Declension, viz. *Vir*, a Man, *Ler*, the Husband's Brother, and *Trevis*, a Man of Trevis; and only one in *ur*, *satur*, full, (of old *saturnus*) an Adjective. *Os* and *on* are Greek Terminations and generally changed into *us* and *um* in their Nominative.

These with other Greek Nouns in *us* have sometimes their Accusative in *er*. [We have excluded the Termination *ens* from this Declension, as belonging more properly to the Third; as, *Orpheus*, *Orpheos*, *Orpei*, *Orbea*, *Orphi*. For when it is of the second Declension, it is *ens* of two Syllables, and so falls under the Termination *us*; *Orphe-us*, *Orphe-i* (contrasted *Orpei* and *Orphi*) (*Orphe-o*, *Orphe-um*, *Orphe-o*.)]

Tertia Declinatio.

M. Q Uonodo dignosciatur Tertia Declinatio?

The Third Declension

M. H ow is the Third Declension known?

P, P

Part II. Chap. I. of NOUN.

D. Per Genitivum singularem in *u*, & Dativum in *i*.

M. Quot habet Terminations seu syllabas finales?

D. Septuaginta & unam.

M. Quot habet literas finales?

D. Undecim; *a, e, o, c, d, n, r, s, t, x; ut,*

Diadema, a Crown; Sedile, a Seat; Sermo, Speech; Lac, Milk; David, a Man's Name; Animal, a living Creature; Cesten, a Comb; Pater, a Father; Rupes, a Rock; Caput, the Head; Rex, a King.

Sermo, Speech, Masc.

Sing.

Nom. sermo,

Gen. sermonis,

Dat. sermoni,

Acc. sermonem,

Voc. sermo,

Abl. sermone:

Plur.

Nom. sermones,

Gen. sermonum,

Dat. sermonibus,

Acc. sermones,

Voc. sermones,

Abl. sermonibus.

Terminations.

o, e, o, &c. es, a,

u, um, ium,

t, ibus.

em, es, a,

es, a,

es, a.

Sedile, a Seat, Neut.

Sing.

Nom. sedile,

Gen. sedilis,

Dat. sedili,

Acc. sedile,

Voc. sedile,

Abl. sedili;

Plur.

Nom. sedilia,

Gen. sedilium,

Dat. sedilibus,

Acc. sedilia,

Voc. sedilia,

Abl. sedilibus.

As Sermo, so most Substantives of this Declension in *a, o, e, d, n, t, x, er, or, ur, as, os, us*; (except their Acc. and Voc. when they are Nouns, or when they want the Plural Number.) Also (when they have more Syllables in their Gen. than Nom.) all Words in *es*, and most of these in *is*.

Of the final Letters of the third Declension Six are peculiar to it, *o, e, d, n, t, x*, the other Five are common to other Declensions, viz. *a, c, s, r, u*.

The copious final Letters are *o, n, r, s, x*.

The copious final Syllables are *io, do, go, on, er, or, ur, es, is, os, us, ns, rs, us*.

All Nouns in *a* of this Declension are originally Greek, and have always an before it. There are only two Words in *s*: *Lac*, Milk, & *Halec*, a Herring. Words in *d* are proper Names of Men, and very rare. There are only three Words in *t*, viz. *Caput*, the Head; *Sinciput*, the Fore-head; *Occiput*, the hind-head.

1. The Terminations *er, or, es, o, n,*

2. The Terminations *io, do, go, on, er, es, is, os, us,* *x*, and *s* after a Consonant,

3. The Terminations *a, e, c, l, ns, er, ur, us, us,*

But from these there are many Exceptions.

Masculine.

Feminine.

Neuter.

Neut.

Rudiments of the Latin Tongue.

Note 1. That for the most part the Nouns have 2 Syllables more than
Genitivus; and whereat otherwise, generally end in *e*, *es*, *eris*,
Note 2. That whatever Nouns do not all come before *e* in the Genitivus
end in *um* through the other Cases (except the Ablative and Vocative)
as, *Thomae*, *caecis*, *caecorum*, *a Thome*, *Sophonis*, *soeum*, *Hom*,
caecis, *a lounex*, *Carmen*, *caecis*, *Ypsig*, *spex*, *ducis*, *a Ju*.

R E G U L E S.

1. Nomina in *e*, & Neutra
in *al* & *er* statim in Ablati-
vo.

2. Quæ habent *e* tantum in
Ablativo faciunt Genitivum
dupalem in *um*.

3. Quæ habent *e* tantum,
vel *e* aut *i* simul, faciunt *um*.

4. Neutra quæ habent *e* in
Ablativo singulari, habent *e*
in Nominativo, Accusativo &
Vocativo plurali.

5. At quæ habent in Abo-
lativo, faciunt *u*.

1. Nouns in *e*, and Neutra
in *al* and *er*, have *i* in the
Ablative.

2. Those which have *e* in
the Ablative make their
Genitivus plural in *um*.

3. Those which have *i* or
or *e* and *i* together, make in

4. Neuters which have *e* in
their Ablative sing, have in
the Nominative, Accusative,
Vocative plural.

5. But those which have *i*
in the Ablative, make *ia*.

EXCEPTIONS in the Accusative Singular.

1. Some Nouns in *is* have *em* in the Accusative; as, *Vix*, *vim*, Strength; *Tv*, the Cough; *Sitis*, Thirst; *Buris*, the Head of a Plough; *Rauis*, Hoe; *Aspis*, a Man's Rule; To which add Names of Rivers in *is*; as, *Amnis*, *Thames*; which the Poets sometimes make in *iu*.

2. Some in *is* have *em* or *imi*; as, *Natis*, a Shin; *Puppis*, the Stern; *Sax*, an Ax; *Clavis*, a Key; *Febris*, a Fever; *Pelvis*, a Basin; *Ribis*, a Rose; *Turris*, a Tower; *Navem* vel *navigem*, &c.

EXCEPTIONS in the Ablative Singular.

1. Nouns which have *em* in the Accusative have *i* in the Ablative; as, *Vix*, *vi*, &c. Those that have *em* or *imi* have *em* in the Ablative; as, *Navis*, *navem* vel *navi*.

2. *Canalis*, *Factis*, *Bipennis*, have *i*; *Avis*, *Annis*, *Ignis*, *Unguis*, *Rubor*, with some others have *e* or *i*; but most commonly *e*.

3. These Neuters in *er* have *e*, *Far*, *Fudor*, *Nectar* and *Hepar*; *Sab*, *sale*.

EXCEPTIONS in the Genitive Plural.

1. Nouns of one Syllable in *as*, *is*, and *es* with a Consonant before it, have *um*; as, *As*, *Effum*, *Lis*, *litium*, *Urbis*, *urbium*.

2. Allo Nouns in *es* and *is*, not increasing in their Genitive; as, *Vallis*, *vallis*; *Rupes*, *rupium*. Except *Panis*, *Canis*, *Vitis* and *Potestis*.

3. To which add *Corn*, *Cor*, *Cos*, *Dos*, *Mus*, *Nox*, *Nox*, *Linter*, *Sal*, *Os*, *Uter*. That when the Genitive Plural ends in *um*, the Accusative frequently ends in *em*; as *Uter*, *uterum*; *Uter*, *uteris*; *Uter*, *uteris*; *Uter*, *uteris*.

Part II. Chap. I. of Nouns.

Of Greek Nouns.

Greek Nouns have sometimes their Genitive in *is* or *as* which are, in such as increase their Gender, with *is*; as, *Ares*, *Ariadne*, vel *Ariadni*, an Amazon; *Briareus*, *Briseis*, *Briseis*, a Woman's Name. Such as increase the same, in *as*, *Minos*, *Minos*, *Minos*, *Hercules*, *Hercules*, an Hero; these add *as* before the Genitive, *heros*.

Nouns, That are in *is* which are in the second Kind, and Plurals of the first.

I. Greek Nouns, that include their Genitive in *is* or *as* not pure, (i. e. in a Consonant ending), have frequently their Accusative sing. in *a*, and plur. in *as*; as, *Eumenides*, *emendae*, *tempora*; also *Minoi*, *Micines*, *nos*; *Tros*, *Trois*, *Trois*. *Heras*, *heros*, *heroa*. 2. Whole Nouns, whose Genitive ends in *is* pure, have their Accusative in *is* also, *ys* or *ys*; as, *Harpis*, *ys*, *ys*, *is* or *in*, *Chelys*, *byos*, a Linie, *chelys*.

3. Of Words in *is* which have their Genitive *is* or *dos*. Males in *is*, Accusative for the first person *is* or *in*, seldom in *dos*, and never in *de*. I know of 5; as, *Pato*, *Patris*, vel *Patris*, vel *Parides*; Femelles have it commonly *dos* or *de*, and seldom *is* or *in*; as, *Brieti*, *Brioides*, vel *Bri-*

H. Terminines have *is* in their Genitive, and *o* in their other Cases; as, *Dido*, *Didus*, *Dido*, &c. or they may be declined after the Latin Form, *Dido*, *Didoni*, &c. which *did* always follows.

IV. Greek Nouns in *i* frequently throw away *i* in their Vocative; as, *Cal-* *Achilles*, *Pato*, *Lipys*, *Orphus*, *Otina*, *Abilla*, *Par*, *Lipys*, *Orpheus*.

V. Greek Nouns have *on*, (and sometimes *en*) in their Genitive plural; as, *grammaton*, *Hareton*, *on* and very rarely *un*.

VI. Greek Nouns in *ma* have most frequently *is* in their Dative and Ablative plur. as, *Poema*; *poematis*, because of old they said *poematum*, -ti. But has *am*, and *bobus* or *bubus*.

Quarta Declinatio.

M. Quemodo dignosciatur Quarta Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum singularem in *is*, & Dativum in *ui*.

M. Quot habet Terminations?

D. Duas; *is* & *ui*; ut,

Fructus, *Fruit*; Cornu, *an Horn*.

Fructus, *Fruit*, Masc.

Nom. *fructus*

Gen. *fructu*

Dat. *fructu*

Acc. *fructu*

Voc. *fructu*

Abl. *fructu*

The fourth Declension.

M. *H*ow is the Fourth Declension known?

S. By the Genitive singular in *is*, and Dative in *ui*.

M. How many Terminations hath it?

S. Two; *is* and *ui*; As,

Nom. *fructus*, *is*,

Gen. *fructuum*, *ui*,

Dat. *fructibus*, *ui*,

Acc. *fructus*, *ui*,

Voc. *fructus*, *ui*,

Abl. *fructibus*, *ui*,

Rudiments of the Latin Tongue.

Corpu, an Horn. Nent.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>cornu,</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>cornua,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cornu,</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cornuum,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cornu,</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cornibus,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>cornu,</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>cornua,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>cornu,</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>cornua,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>cornu;</i>	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>cornibus.</i>

As Cornu, so Vultus, the Countenance; Manus, the Hand; Fem. Causa, a Cause or Chance. As Cornu, so Genit. the Knee; Vern, a Spit; Tonitru, Thunder.

Nouns in *us* of this Declension are generally Masculine, and those in *is* Neuter, and indeclinable in the singular Number.

RULE. Some Nouns have *ibus* in their Dative and Ablative plural, *arcu*, a Bow; *artu*, a Joynt; *lacu*, a Lake; *acu*, a Needle; *portu*, Port or Harbour; *pariu*, a Birth; *tribu*, a Tribe; *vern*, a Spit.

NOTE. That of old Nouns of this Declension belonged to the Third, and were declined as *grus*, *gruis*, a Cran; thus, *fructu*, *fructuis*, *fructui*, *fructum*; *fructu*: *fructus*, *fructuum*, *fructibus*, *fructus*, *fructus*, *fructibus*. That all the Cases are contracted except the Dative sing. and Genitive plur. There are some Examples of the Genitive in *is*; yet extant; as on the contrary there are several of the Dative in *u*.

The blessed Name Iesu- Domus, an House, Fem. is thus declined.
sus is thus declined.

	Sing.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>domus,</i>	<i>Nom.</i> domus,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>domu</i> ,	<i>Gen.</i> domorum, v. -mi.
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>domu</i> ,	<i>Dat.</i> domibus,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>domum,</i>	<i>Acc.</i> domos, v. -is.
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>domu</i> ,	<i>Voc.</i> domus,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>domo:</i>	<i>Abl.</i> domibus.

[**NOTE.** That the Genitive domi is only used when it signifies At home; and the Dative, is found in Horace, Epist. I. 10, 13.]

Quinta Declinatio.

M. Q uomodo dignosci- tur Quinta De- clinatio?

D. Per Genitivum singu- larem & Dativum in ei.

M. Quot habet Termina- tiones?

D. Unam, nempe es; ut, Res, a Thing, Fem.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>res,</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>res,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>rei,</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>terum,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>rei,</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>rebus,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>rem,</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>res,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>res,</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>res,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>re;</i>	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>rebus.</i>

The Fifth Declension.

M. H ow is the Fifth De- clesion known?

S. By the Genitive and De- tive singular in ei.

M. How many Termina- tions has it?

S. One, namely es; As, Terminations.

<i>es,</i>	<i>es,</i>
<i>ei,</i>	<i>erum,</i>
<i>ei,</i>	<i>ebus,</i>
<i>em,</i>	<i>es,</i>
<i>es,</i>	<i>es,</i>
<i>ebus,</i>	<i>ebus,</i>

Part II. Chap. I. of NOUNS.

Nouns of the Fifth Declension are not above fifty, and are all Feminine, as *Dies*, a Day, Masc. or Fem. and *Meridies*, the Mid-day or Noon. Mas. All Nouns of this Declension end in *ies*, except three, *Fides*, Faith; *Sper-*
ope; *Res*, a Thing.

And all Nouns in *ies* are of the Fifth, except these four, *Abies*, a Fir-tree; *aries*, a Ram; *Paries*, a Wall, and *Quies*, Rest, which are of the Third. Most Nouns of this Declension want the Genitive, Dative and Ablative plural; and many of them want the Plural altogether.

General Remarks on all the Declensions.

1. The Genitive plural of the first Four is sometimes contracted, especially by Poets; as, *Calicolum*, *Deum*, *Macedum*, *Currum*; for *Calicolorum*, *Deorum*, *Macedonum*, *Curuum*.

2. When the Genitive of the Second ends in *ii*, the last *i* is sometimes taken away by Poets; as, *Tuguri* for *tugurii*. We read also *Aulai* for *aula* in the First, and *Fide* for *fides* in the Fifth; and so of other like Words.

Declinatio Adjectivorum.

Adjectiva sunt vel primæ & secundæ Declinationes, vel tertiae tantum.

Omnia Adjectiva habentiares Terminaciones (præter undecim (a)) sunt primæ & secundæ: At quæ unam vel duas Terminaciones habentant tertiae.

Adjectiva primæ & secundæ habent Masculinum in (b) vel *er*; Fœmininum semper in *a*, Neutrum semper in *um*; ut,

Bonus, bona, bonum, good; Tener, tenera, tenerum, tender.

Bonus bona, bonum, good.

Sing.

Nom.	bon-us,	-a,	-um,	Nom.	bon-i,	-æ,	-z,
Gen.	bon-i,	-æ,	-i,	Gen.	bon-orum,	-arum,	-orum,
Dat.	bon-o,	-æ,	-o,	Dat.	bon-is,	-is,	-is,
Acc.	bon-um,	-am,	-um,	Acc.	bon-os,	-as,	-a,
Voc.	bon-e,	-a,	-um,	Voc.	bon-i,	-æ,	-z,
Abl.	bon-o,	-a,	-o:	Abl.	bon-is,	-is,	-is.

The Declension of Adjectives.

Adjectives are either of the First and Second Declension, or of the Third only.

All Adjectives having three Terminations (except eleven) are of the First and Second: But those which have one or two Terminations are of the Third.

Adjectives of the First and Second have their Masculine in us, or er; their Feminine always in a, and their Neuter always in um; as,

(a) Viz. *acer*, *alacer*, *celer*, *celeber*, *saluber*, *volucr*, *campeller*, *caviller*, *paluster*, *silvester*; which are of the Third, and have their Masc. in *us*, their Fem. in *is*, and Neut. in *e*.

(b) *For satis*, full, was of old *satis*.

Tener

Rudiments of the Latin Tongue.

Sing.	Tener, tenera, tenerum, tender.	Plur.
N. tener, -era, -erum, N. teneri, -era, -era,	G. tenerorum, -erorum, -era	G. tenerorum, -erorum, -era
G. teneri, -era, -eri, G. tenerorum, -erorum, -era	D. teneris, -eris, -era	D. teneris, -eris, -era
D. tenero, -era, -ero, D. teneris, -eris, -era	A. tenerum, -eram, -erum, A. teneros, -eras, -era	A. tenerum, -eram, -erum, A. teneros, -eras, -era
A. tener, -era, -erum, V. teneri, -era, -era	E. tener, -era, -erum, V. teneri, -era, -era	E. tener, -era, -erum, V. teneri, -era, -era
E. tenero, -era, -ero; A. teneris, -eris, -eris	A. tenero, -era, -ero; A. teneris, -eris, -eris	A. tenero, -era, -ero; A. teneris, -eris, -eris

Adjectives are declined as three Substantives of the same Terminations. Declensions: as in the Examples above, *bonna*, like *dominus*; *tenuis*, like *bona* and *tenera*, like *penna*; *bonum* and *tenerum*, like *regnum*. Thus like the Ancients, as is clear from Varro, lib. 3. de Anal. declined every Genus separately, and not all three jointly, as we now commonly do. And perhaps it may not be amiss to follow this Method at first, especially if the Boy has no Capacity.

Of Adjectives in *er*, some retain the *e*, as *tener*. So *miser*, -era, -erum; *liber*, -era, -erum, free; and all Compounds in *ger* and *ter*. Others, as, *pulcher*, *pulchra*, *pulchrum*, fair; *niger*, -gra, -grum, black.

The following Adjectives, *unus*, one; *totus*, whole; *situs*, alone; *ullus*, *nullus*, none; *alius*, another of many; *alter*, another or one of two; *neither*; *uter*, whether; with its Compounds, *uterque*, both; *libet*, *utervix*, which of the two you please; *alterutus*, the one or the other, have their Genitive sing. in *ius*, and Dative in *i*.

Adiectiva tertiae Declinationis.

Unius Terminatio[n]is.

Felix, Happy.

Sing.

N. fel-ix, -ix, -ix,	G. fel-icis, -icis, -icis,	D. fel-ici, -ici, -ici,
G. fel-icem, -icem, -ix,	D. fel-iciem, -icem, -ix,	A. fel-icem, -icem, -ix,
V. fel-ix, -ix, -ix,	V. fel-icem, -icem, -ix,	A. fel-ice, vel -ici, &c.
A. fel-ice, vel -ici, &c.		

Duarum Terminacionum.

Sing.

N. mitis, mitis, mitis,	G. mitis, mitis, mitis,	D. miti, miti, miti,
G. mitis, mitis, mitis,	D. mitibus, mitibus, mitibus,	A. mites, mites, mitia,
D. miti, miti, miti;	A. mites, mites, mitia,	V. mites, mites, mitia,
A. mitem, mitem, mitem,	V. mites, mites, mitia,	A. mitibus, mitibus, mitibus,
V. mitis, mitis, mitis,	A. miti, miti, miti;	V. mites, mites, mitia,

Mitis, mite, Meek.

Plur.

N. mites, mites, mites,	G. mitium, mitium, mitium,	D. mitibus, mitibus, mitibus,
G. mitium, mitium, mitium,	A. mites, mites, mitia,	V. mites, mites, mitia,
D. mitibus, mitibus, mitibus,	V. mites, mites, mitia,	A. mitibus, mitibus, mitibus,
A. mites, mites, mitia,	A. miti, miti, miti;	V. mites, mites, mitia,
V. mites, mites, mitia,	V. miti, miti, miti;	A. mitibus, mitibus, mitibus,

Miti

Adiectiva of the third Declension.

Of one Termination.

2. Of Two Terminations.

Mitior, mitius, Meeker.

Sing.

Plur.

miti-or,	-or,	-us,	<i>N.</i> miti-ores,	-ores,	-ora;
miti-oris,	-oris,	-oris,	<i>G.</i> miti-orum,	-orum,	-orum;
miti-ori,	-ori,	-ori,	<i>D.</i> miti-ribus,	-ribus,	-ribus;
miti-orem,	-orem,	-us,	<i>A.</i> miti-ores,	-ores,	-ora;
miti-or,	-or,	-us,	<i>V.</i> miti-ores,	-ores,	-ora;
miti-ore vel -ori,	<i>&c.</i>		<i>A.</i> miti-ribus,	-ribus,	-ribus;

3. Trium Terminationum. 3. Of three Terminations.

Acer vel acris, atris, acre; Sharp.

Sing.

Plur.

a-cer v.	-cris,	-cris,	-cte,	<i>N.</i> a-cres,	-cres,	-ctid;
a-cris,		-cris,	-cris,	<i>G.</i> a-crium,	-crium,	-crium;
a-cri;		-cri,	-cri,	<i>D.</i> a-cribus,	-cribus,	-cribus;
a-crem;		-crem,	-cre,	<i>A.</i> a-cres;	-cres,	-eria,
a-cer v.	-cris,	-cris,	-cte,	<i>V.</i> a-cres,	-cres,	-ctia;
a-cri,		-cri,	-cri:	<i>A.</i> a-cribus,	-cribus,	-cribus;

R E G U L A E.

1. Adjectiva tertiae Declinationis habent e vel i in Ablativo singulari.
2. At si neutrum fit in e, Ablativus habet i tantum.
3. Genitivus pluralis deficit in ium; & Neutrum Nominativi, Accusativi & Vocabi in ia.
4. Excipe Comparativa, & um & a postulant.

R U L E S.

1. Adjectives of the Third Declension have e or i in the Ablative singular.
2. But if the Neuter be in e, the Ablative has i only.
3. The Genitive plural ends in ium, and the Neuter of the Nominative, Accusative and Vocative in ia.
4. Except Comparatives which require um and a.

E X C E P T I O N S.

1. Dives, Hospes, Sospes, Superfites, Juvenis, Senex & Pauper have a in the Ablat. Sing. and consequently um in the Genit. plur.

2. Compos, Impos, Consors, Inops, Vigil, Supplex, Uber, Degener & Puber & Compounds ending in ceps, sex, pes & corpor, as, Princeps, Artifex, Bi-, Tricorpor, have um, not ium.

NOTE. That all these have seldom the Neuter Sing. and never almost the Plur. in the Nomin. and Accus. To which add Memor, which has acri, & memorum, and Locuples, which has locupletium; also Deses, Rebes, Perpes, Prapes, Teres, Concolor, Vericolor; which being hardly met with in the Genit. Plur. 'tis a doubt whether they should have um; tho I incline most to the former.

3. *Par* has *paris*; *Vetus*, *vetera* & *veterum*; *Plus* (which has only the *N.* in the Sing.) has *plus*, & *plures*, *plura* (or *pluria*) *plurium*.

NOTE 1. That Adjectives in *ss*, have more frequently *s* than *i*, and *Par* & *plus* in the Ablatives call'd Absolute have always *s* as, *Carolo regnante*, *not regnanti*.

NOTE 2. That Adjectives joined with Substantives Neuter hardly ever ha*t*, but *i* as, *Victri*c* ferro*, not *victrice*.

NOTE 3. That Adjectives when they are put Substantively have always *as*, *Affinis*, *Familiaris*, *Rivalis*, *Sodalis*, &c. So *Par*, a Match *s* as, *Care queque suo coeunt*. Ovid.

Of NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

1. THE Ordinal and Multiplicative Numbers (see Chap. 9.) are regular declined. The Distributive wants the singular, as also doth the Cardinal except *Unus*, which is declined as in Page 16, and hath the Plural, when joined with a Substantive that wanteth the Sing. as, *Una litera*, *Una moenia*; or where several Particulars are considered complexly as making one Compound; *Unisex dies*, i. e. One Space of six Days; *Una vestimenta* i. e. One Suit Apparel. *Plaut.*

Duo and *Tres* are declined after this Manner,

<i>Puer.</i>	Nom. <i>duo</i> ,	<i>duse</i> ,	<i>duo</i> ,	
	Gen. <i>duorum</i> ,	<i>duarum</i> ,	<i>duorum</i> ,	
	Dat. <i>duobus</i> ,	<i>duabus</i> ,	<i>duobus</i> ,	
	Acc. <i>duos vel-o</i> ,	<i>duas</i> ,	<i>duo</i> ,	
	Voc. <i>duo</i> ,	<i>duse</i> ,	<i>duo</i> ,	
	Abl. <i>duobus</i> ,	<i>duabus</i> ,	<i>duobus</i> .	

<i>Plau.</i>	Nom. <i>tres</i> ,	<i>tres</i> ,	<i>tri</i> ,	
	Gen. <i>trium</i> ,	<i>triam</i> ,	<i>tria</i> ,	
	Dat. <i>tribus</i> ,	<i>tribus</i> ,	<i>tribu</i> ,	
	Acc. <i>tres</i> ,	<i>tres</i> ,	<i>tra</i> ,	
	Voc. <i>tres</i> ,	<i>tres</i> ,	<i>tra</i> ,	
	Abl. <i>tribus</i> ,	<i>tribus</i> ,	<i>tribu</i> ,	

† *Ambo*, Both, is declined as *Duo*.

2. From *Quatuor* to *Centum* are all indeclinable.

3. From *Centum* to *Mille*, they are declin'd thus, *Ducenti*, *ducenta*, *centia*; *ducentorum*, *ducentarum*, *ducentorum*, &c.

4. As to *Mille*, *Varro*, and all the Grammarians after him down to the last make it (when is it put before a Genitive plural,) a Substantive indeclinable in Sing. and in the Plur. declin'd, *Millia*, *millium*, *millibus*; but when it hath a Substantive joined to it in any other Case, they make it an Adjective pl. indeclinable. But *Sciopinus*, and after him *Gronovius*, almost demonstrate that *Mille* is always an Adjective Plurals and under that Termination of all Cases & Genders; but that it hath two Neuters, *hic Mille*, & *haec Millia*: The first is used, when one thousand is signified, and the second when more than one. They shew, that, where it seems to be a Substantive governing a Gen. *Multitudo*, *Numerus*, *Mannus*, *Pecunia*, *Pondus*, *Spatium*, *Corpus*, or like, are understood.

After the Declension of Substantives and Adjectives separately, it may be improper to exercise the Learner with some Examples of a Substantive and adjective declin'd together; which will both make him more ready in the Declensions, and render the Dependence of the Adjective upon the Substantive more familiar to him. Let the Examples at first be of the same Terminations and Declensions; as, *Dominus iustus*, a just Lord; *Penna bona*, a good Pen; *Ingenium eximum*, an excellent Wit; Afterwards let them be different in one or both; *Puer probus*, a good Boy; *Lectio facilis*, an easy Lesson; *Poeta optimus*, an excellent Poet; *Fructus dulcis*, sweet Fruits; *Dies faulus*, a happy Day, &c. if the Boy has as yet been taught Writing, let him write them, either in the School or at Home, to be revised by the Master next Day.

OF IRREGULAR NOUNS.

Here, (for we cannot here make a full Enumeration of them) may be reduced to the following Scheme:

I. Detective.	Wanung	1. Substantives,	1. Number,	Sing. as, <i>Liberi, Milia, Arma.</i>
				Plur. as, <i>Aer, Hispanus, Europa.</i>
II. Adjectives,	Wandug	2. Cases,	Nom. & Voc.	<i>Dicitur.</i>
			Gen.	<i>Natura.</i>
III. Variable.	Is Gender Sur- ing Sing.	3. Gender,	Dat.	<i>Vix.</i>
			Voc.	<i>Ego.</i>
IV. Redundant,	-	2. Number,	Gen. Dat. & Abl. Plur. as, <i>Mel.</i>	
			Three; as, <i>Dicas, dicim, dicem.</i>	
V. Indeclinables,	-	3. Case,	Two; as, <i>Suppetis, suppetim.</i>	
			One; as, <i>Dicis, Inficias, Nostris.</i>	
VI. Irregular.	-	-	Masc. as, <i>Catena, catena.</i>	
			Fem. as, <i>Quisquis, quicquid.</i>	
VII. Declinables.	-	-	Neut. as, <i>Compos.</i>	
			Masc. & Fem. as, <i>Plus.</i>	
VIII. Irregular.	-	-	Masc. & Neut. as, <i>Siccfida.</i>	
			Fem. & Neut. as, <i>Tres.</i>	
IX. Redundant.	-	-	Plur. as, <i>Unusquisque.</i>	
			Sing. as, <i>Centum.</i>	
X. Irregular.	-	-	Voc. as, <i>Nullus.</i>	
			Dat. & Abl. as, <i>Tantundem.</i>	
XI. Redundant.	-	-	Voc. only; as, <i>Melis, melis.</i>	
XII. Irregular.	-	-	Masc. as, <i>Manalis, Manalis.</i>	
			Masc. & Neut. as, <i>Laurus, laurus.</i>	
XIII. Irregular.	-	-	Neut. as, <i>Carbasus, carbasus.</i>	
			Masc. as, <i>Caelum, caeli.</i>	
XIV. Irregular.	-	-	Fem. as, <i>Epulum, epula.</i>	
			Masc. & Neut. as, <i>Frenum, freni, or</i>	
XV. Irregular.	-	-	2. & 1. as, <i>Delicima, delicia.</i>	
			2. & 4. as, <i>Laurus, laurus.</i>	
XVI. Irregular.	-	-	3. & 2. as, <i>Vas, vas.</i>	
			altogether; as, <i>Fas.</i>	
XVII. Irregular.	-	-	In the Sing. as, <i>Cornu.</i>	
XVIII. Irregular.	-	-	only; as, <i>Helena, Helene.</i>	
			& Gender; as, <i>Tigmis, tigmina.</i>	
XIX. Irregular.	-	-	& Declas, <i>Materis, materies.</i>	
			Gend. and Decl. as, <i>Aether, aethra.</i>	
XX. Irregular.	-	-	only; as, <i>bis & hoc vulgas.</i>	
XXI. Irregular.	-	-	only; as, <i>Fames, famis.</i>	
			of the 3d. Abl. same of the 5th, because the last Syllable is always long with the Poet.	

Note, 1. That the *Defective Nouns* are not so numerous as is commonly believed.

Note, 2. That those which vary too little may be ranked under the *Defective*; and those which vary too much, under the *Redundant*. E. G. *Caelorum* comes not from *Caelus*, but from *Celus*; & *Vasorum* not from *vasis*, *vasis*; but from *vasum*, *vasi*: But Custom, which alone gives Laws to Languages, has dropt the Singular, and retain'd the Plural; and so of others.

De Comparatione.

M. **Q**uo^t sunt Gradus Comparationis?

D. Tres; *Positivus*, *Comparativus* & *Superlativus*.

M. Quotæ Declinationis sunt hi gradus?

D. *Positivus* est *Adjectivum Primæ & Secundæ Declinationis*, vel *Tertiæ tantum*; *Comparativus* est semper *Tertiæ*; *Superlativus* semper *Primæ & Secundæ*.

M. Unde formatur *Comparativus gradus*?

D. A proximo casu *Positivi* in *i*, addendo pro masculino & feminino syllabam *or*, & *us* pro neutro; *ut*,

Dōctus, learned, Gen. *dōcti*, ed: *Mitis*, meek, Dat. *mīti*, *doctior* & *doctius*, more learned; *mitior* & *mitius*, more meek.

M. Unde formatur *Superlativus*?

D. 1. Si *Positivus* definit in *er*, *Superlativus* formatur addendo *rimus*; *ut*,

Pulcher, fair, *pulcherrimus*, most fair; *Pauper*, poor, *perrimus*, most poor.

2. Si *Positivus* non definit in *er*, *Superlativus* formatur a proximo casu in *i*, addendo *llimus*; *ut*,

Of Comparison.

M. **H**ow many Degrees of Comparison there?

S. Three; the Positive, Comparative and Superlative.

M. Of what Declension these Degrees?

S. The Positive is an adjective of the First and Second Declension, or Third only; Comparative always of Third; the Superlative almost of the First and Second.

M. Whence is the Comparative Degree formed?

S. From the next Case of Positive in *i*, by adding for Masculine and Feminine Syllable *or*, and *us* for the Neuter; as,

doctior & *doctius*, more learned; *mitior* & *mitius*, more meek.

M. Whence is the Superlative formed?

S. 1. If the Positive ends in *er*, the Superlative is formed adding *rimus*; as,

2. If the Positive ends in *er*, the Superlative is formed from the next Case in *i*, adding *llimus*; as,

Gen. *Dotti*, *dottissimus*, most learned; Dat. *Miti*, *mitissimus*, most meek.

By Grammatical Co m p A R. 130 N we understand Three Adjective Nouns, of which the two last are formed from the first, and import Comparison with it, that is, Heightening or Lessening of its Signification.

Consequently these Adjectives only which are capable of having their Signification increased or diminished, can be compared.

The POSITIVE signifies the Quality of a thing simply and absolutely; as, *durus*, hard, *parvus*, little.

The COMPARATIVE heightens or lessens that Quality; as, *Durior*, harder, *minor*, less.

The SUPERLATIVE heightens or lessens it to a very high, or very low Degree; as, *Durissimus*, hardest, or most hard; *Minimus*, very little, or least.

The Positive hath various Terminations; the Comparative ends always in *ius*; the Superlative always in *mus*, *ma*, *mum*.

[↑ The Positive properly speaking is no Degrees of Comparison, for it does not compare things together: However it is accounted one, because the other two are founded upon, and formed from it.]

The SIGN of the Comparative in our Language is the Syllable *er* added to an Adjective, or the Word *more* put before it.

The Sign of the Superlative is the Syllable *est* added to an Adjective, or the Words *very* or *most* put before it.

NOTE, That when the Positive is a long Word, or would otherwise sound harsh having *er* or *est* added to it, we commonly make the Comparative by the Word *more*, and the Superlative by *most*, or *very* put before it.

And for the like Reason the Latin Comparative is sometimes made by *Magis*, and the Superlative by *Valde* or *Maxime* put before the Positive. And these are particularly used, when the Positive ends in *us* with a Vowel before it; as, *ius*, godly; *arduus*, high; *Idoneus*, fit; tho not always.

IRREGULAR COMPARISONS.

1. *Bonus*, *melior*, *optimus*: *Good*, better, best.
- Malus*, *pejor*, *peccimus*: *Evil*, worse, worst.
- Magnus*, *major*, *maximus*: *Great*, greater, greatest.
- Parvus*, *minor*, *minimus*: *Little*, less, least.

Multus, *plurimus*; *multa*, *plurima*; *multum*, *plus*, *plurimum*: much, more, most.

2. *Facilis*, *easy*, *Humilis*, *low*, *Similis*, *like*; make their Superlative by changing *is* into *imus*; *thus*, *facillimus*, *humillimus*, *simillimus*.

3. *Exter*, outward, *Citer*, hither, *Superus*, above, *Inferus*, below, *Posternus*, behind, have regular Comparatives; but their Superlatives are, *extremus* (or *extimus*), lowest; *citimus*, *hitherto*, *supremus* (or *summus*), uppermost, highest; *infimus* (or *imetus*), lowest; *postremus* (or *postimus*), latest, or last.

4. Compounds in *Dicnus*, *Loquns*, *Ficus* & *Volus*, have anterior & *entimus*; as, *Maledicus*, one that railleth; *Magniloquus*, one that boasteth; *Beneficus*, beneficent; *Malevolus*, Malevolent. But these seem rather to come from Particles or Nouns in *ent*. Besides, the Comparatives and Superlatives derived from *Loquor* and *Facio* are very rare; and *Terente* has *issimus*, and *Plautus* has *Mendaciloquius*.

5. *Prior*, former, has *Primus*, first; *Ultior*, farther, *Ultimus*, farthest; *Proprior*, nearer, *Proximus*, nearest; *Ocius*, swifter, *Ocissimus*, swiftest.

gives being out of use, or quite wanting. *Primitus* has also another Compar. formed from it, viz. *Primitior*.

6. There are also a great many other Adjectives capable of having their signification increased, which yet want one or more of these Degrees of Comparison; as, *Albus*, white, without Compar. & Superl. *Ingens*, great, *Inguitus*, greater, without the Superl. *Sacer*, holy, *Sacerinus*, most holy, without Comp. *Anterior*, former, without Posit. & Superl.

¶ These three Degrees of Comparison being nothing else but three distinct Adjectives, may be declined either severally by it self, or jointly all together, Respect still being had to the Declensions. But the first way is much easier, and will answer all the Purposes of Comparison as well as the other.

C A P. II. De Pronomine.

M. Q UOT sunt Pronomina + simplicia?

D. Octodecim; *Ego*, *Tu*, *Sui*; *Ille*, *Ipse*, *Iste*, *Hic*, *Is*, *Quis*, *Qui*: *Meus*, *Tuus*, *Suus*, *Noster*, *Vester*, *Nostras*, *Vestras* & *Cujas*.

¶ Ex his tria sunt Substantiva, *Ego*, *Tu*, *Sui*; reliqua quindecim sunt Adjectiva.

Ego, I,
 Nom. ego, I,
 Gen. mei, of me,
 Dat. mihi, to me,
 Acc. me, me,
 Voc. —
 Abl. me, with me;

Tu, thou,
 N. tu, thou,
 G. tui, of thee,
 D. tibi, to thee,
 A. te, thee,
 V. tu, O thou,
 A. te, with thee;

I, WE,
 Nom. nos, We,
 Gen. nostrum vel nostri,
 Dat. nobis, to us,
 Acc. nos, us,
 Voc. —
 Abl. nobis, with us;

Thou,
 N. vos, ye [you],
 G. vestrum v. vestri, of
 D. vobis, to you,
 A. vos, you,
 V. vos, O ye [you],
 A. vobis, with you;

C H A P. II. Of Pronoun.

M. HOW many Simple Pronouns are there?
 S. Eighteen; *Ego*, *Tu*, *Sui*, *Ille*, *Ipse*, *Iste*, *Hic*, *Is*, *Quis*, *Qui*; *Meus*, *Tuus*, *Suus*, *Noster*, *Vester*, *Nostras*, *Vestras* & *Cujas*.

¶ Of these, three are Substantives, *Ego*, *Tu*, *Sui*; other Fifteen are Adjectives.

Part II. Chap. II. of PRONOUN. 23

Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself.

N.	<i>G. sui, of himself, &c.</i>	N.	<i>G. sui, of themselves,</i>
D.	<i>sibi, to himself,</i>	D.	<i>sibi, to themselves,</i>
A.	<i>se, himself,</i>	A.	<i>se, themselves,</i>
V.	<i>A. se, with himself:</i>	V.	<i>A. se, with themselves.</i>

A PRONOUN is an irregular kind of Noun: Or it is a Part of Speech which has Respect to, and supplies the Place of a Noun; as, instead of your name, I say *Tu*, Thou, or You; instead of *Jacobus fecit*, James did it, I *Ille fecit*, He did it, viz. James.

NOTE, 1. That the Dat. *Mibi* is sometimes by the Poets contracted into *Mi.*
NOTE, 2. That of old the Genit. Plur. of *Ego* was *Nostrorum* & *Nostrum*, *Tu*, *Vestrorum* & *Vestrum*, (of which there are several Examples in *Plautus* *Terence*) which were afterwards contracted into *Nostrum* & *Vestrum*.

NOTE, 3. That we use *Nostrum* & *Vestrum* after Numerals, Partitives, Cognitives & Superlatives; and *Nostris* & *Vestris* after other Nouns and Verbs; so there want not some Examples of these last with *Nostrum* & *Vestrum*, even Cicero himself, as *Vellus* shews.

Ille, illa, illud; *He, she, that, or it.*

N.	<i>ille, illa, illud,</i>	N.	<i>illi, illæ, illa,</i>
G.	<i>illius, illius, illius,</i>	G.	<i>illorum, illarum, illorum,</i>
D.	<i>illi, illi, illi,</i>	D.	<i>illis, illis, illis,</i>
A.	<i>illum, illam, illud,</i>	A.	<i>ilos, illas, illa,</i>
V.	<i>ille, illa, illud,</i>	V.	<i>illi, illæ, illa,</i>
A.	<i>illo, illa, illo:</i>	A.	<i>illis, illis, illis.</i>

Ipse, ipsa, ipsum; he himself, she herself, itself, & Ita.
stud; be, she, that, are declined as Ille, save only that Ipse hath ipsum in the Nom. Acc. & Voc. Neuter.

Hic, hæc, hoc; *This.*

N.	<i>hic, hæc, hoc,</i>	N.	<i>hi, hæ, hæc,</i>
G.	<i>hujus, hujus, hujus,</i>	G.	<i>horum, harum, horum,</i>
D.	<i>huic, huic, huic,</i>	D.	<i>his, his, his,</i>
A.	<i>hunc, hanc, hoc,</i>	A.	<i>hos, has, hæc,</i>
V.	<i>hic, hæc, hoc,</i>	V.	<i>hi, hæ, hæc,</i>
A.	<i>hoc, hæc, hoc:</i>	A.	<i>his, his, his.</i>

Is, ea, id; *He, she, it, or that.*

Nom.	<i>is, ea, id,</i>	Nom.	<i>ii, ea, ea,</i>
Gen.	<i>eius, ejus, ejus,</i>	Gen.	<i>eorum, earum, eorum,</i>
Dat.	<i>ei, ei, ei,</i>	Dat.	<i>iis vel eis,</i>
Acc.	<i>eum, eam, id,</i>	Acc.	<i>eos, eas, ea,</i>
Voc.		Voc.	
Abl.	<i>eo, ea, eo:</i>	Abl.	<i>iis vel eis.</i>
			<i>Quis</i>

Quis, quæ, quod *vel* quid; *Who*, *which*, *what*?
Sing.

Plur.

<i>N.</i> quis, quæ, quod <i>vel</i> quid, <i>N.</i> qui, quæ, quæ,	<i>G.</i> cuius, cuius, cuius, <i>G.</i> quorum, quarum, quoru-
<i>D.</i> cui, cui, cui, <i>D.</i> queis <i>vel</i> quibus,	<i>A.</i> quem, quam, quod <i>v.</i> quid, <i>A.</i> quos, quas, quæ,
<i>V.</i> ———	<i>V.</i> ———

A. quo, qua, quo; *A.* queis *vel* quibus.
Qui, quæ, quod; *Who*, *which*, *that*.
Sing.

Plur.

<i>N.</i> qui, quæ, quod, <i>N.</i> qui, quæ, quæ,	<i>G.</i> quorum, quarum, quoru-
<i>G.</i> cuius, cuius, cuius, <i>G.</i> quorum, quarum, quoru-	<i>D.</i> queis <i>vel</i> quibus,
<i>D.</i> cui, cui, cui, <i>D.</i> queis <i>vel</i> quibus,	<i>A.</i> quos, quas, quæ,
<i>V.</i> ———	<i>V.</i> ———

A. quo, qua, quo; *A.* queis *vel* quibus.

*M*eus, my, or mine; *Tuus*, thy, or thine; *Suis*, his own, his own, its own, their own, are declined like *Bonus*, -a, -um. And *Noster*, our, or ours; *Vester*, your, or yours, like *Pulcher*, -chrum, of the First and Second Declension. But *Tuus*, *Suis* & *Vester* want the Vocative; *Noster* & *Meus* have it, which this last hath *mi*, (and sometimes *meus*,) in the Mas. Sing.

Nostras, of our Country; *Vestras* of your Country; *Cujus* of what or which Country; are declin'd like *Felix*, of the Third Declension; Gen. *nostratis*, Dat. *nostrati*. &c.

Note. i. That all Nouns and Pronouns which one cannot call upon, address himself unto, want the Vocative. In consequence of which Rule many Nouns; as, *Nullus*, *Nemo*, *Qualis*, *Quantus*, *Quat*, &c. and several Pronouns; as, *Ego*, *Sui*, *Quis*, &c. want the Vocative; but not so many either of the one or the other, as is commonly taught. For which reason, we have given Examples to *Ille*, *Ipse*, *Hic* and *Idem*, therein following the Judgements of great Authors, *Vitré* & *Johnson*, which they support by the following Authorities:

Esto nunc, Sol, tatis, & hac mibi terra precanti. Virg. *AEn.* 12.
Tu mibi libertas illa paterna veni. Tibull. lib 2. El. 4.
Onas illa, que pene eternas huic urbi tenebras attulisti. Cic. pro Flacco.
Ita meas etaber accipe summe prece. Ovid. in Ibin.

And the Vocative of *Idem* seems to be confirmed by that of Ovid, *M. 15.* *Quique suisti*
Hippolytus, dixit, nunc idem Viribus esto.
 Tho all Authors before them will only allow four Pronouns, viz. *Tu*, *M.* *Noster* & *Nostras* to have the Vocative.

No.

Part II. Chap. II. of PRONOUNS.

NOTE, 2. That *Qui* is sometimes used for *Quis*, in Cic. *Qui* *bonas facias?*
Ter. *Qui erit rumin populi, si id feceris?*

NOTE, 3. That *Quod*, with its Compounds, *Aliquod*, *Quodvis*, *Quoddam*, &c. are used when they agree with a Substantive in the same Case; *Quid*, with its Compounds, *Aliquid*, *Quidvis*, *Quiddam*, &c. either have no Substantive except, or govern one in the Genitive; Whence it is that these last are commonly reckoned Substantives. But that *quid* as well as *quod* is originally an Adjective, its Signification plainly shews; otherwise we shall make *Multum*, *Pius*, *autum*, *Quantum*, &c. also Substantives, when they govern the Genitive; which yet most Grammarians agree to be Adjectives having the common Word *negotium* understood.

NOTE, 4. That *Qui* the Relative hath oftentimes *qui* in the Ablative, and that which is very remarkable) in all Genders and Numbers, as Mr. Johnson evinces by a great many Examples out of *Plautus* & *Terence*; to which he might have added one of C. *Nebos*, III. 3.

NOTE, 5. That *Nomines*, *Vocibus* & *Causis* are declin'd like Gentile or Natural Nouns in as of the third Decl. in Imitation of which they are formed, as *Arpinas*, *Fidenas*, *Privernas*, a Man, Woman or Thing, of or belonging to the Towns of *Arpinum*, *Fidena* or *Privernum*; and (tho I do not remember to have seen it) may have the Neut. as well as these, as, Cic. *Iter Arpinas*; Liv. *ellum Privernas*; contrary to what some alledge.

[I pass over taking Notice that in old Authors, especially Plautus, we find *uis* & *quisquis* sometimes of the Femin. Gender, *mis* & *tis* for *mei* & *tu*s**; *ilice* for *his*; *ibus*, *ibus*, for *his*, *iis*; *illae*, *ipse*, *istae*, *qua*, in the Gen. or Dat. sing. Fem; *cum* for *cum*; *ilites* for *illos*; *queum*, *quo*, for *cujus*, *cui*; because they are extraordinary.]

Of COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

I. Some are compounded of *Quis* & *Qui*, with some other Word or Syllable. In these *Quis* is sometimes the first, and sometimes the last part of the Word compounded; but *Qui* is always the first.

1. The Compounds of *Quis*, when it is put first, are *Quisnam*, who? *Quisnam*, *Quisquam*, any one; *Quisque*, every one; *Quisquis*, whosoever: Which are thus declined,

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.
<i>Quisnam</i> , <i>quenam</i> , <i>quodnam</i> <i>vel</i> <i>quidnam</i> ;	<i>cujusnam</i> ,	<i>cuinam</i> .
<i>Quispiam</i> , <i>quæpiam</i> , <i>quodpiam</i> <i>vel</i> <i>quidpiam</i> ;	<i>cujuspiam</i> ,	<i>cuipliam</i> .
<i>Quisquam</i> , <i>quæquam</i> , <i>quodquam</i> <i>vel</i> <i>quidquam</i> ;	<i>cujusquam</i> ,	<i>cuiquam</i> .
<i>Quisque</i> , <i>quenque</i> , <i>quodque</i> <i>vel</i> <i>quidque</i> ;	<i>cujusque</i> ,	<i>cuique</i> .
<i>Quisquis</i> , <i>quidquid</i> <i>vel</i> <i>quicquid</i> ;	<i>cujusquis</i> ,	<i>cuius</i> .

And so forth in their other Cases, according to the simple *Quis*. But *Quis* has no Feminine at all, and the Neuter only in the Nomin. & Accul. *Quisnam* has also *quicquam*, for *quidquam*, Acc. *quenquam*, without the Fem. The Plural is scarcely used.

2. The Compounds of *Quis*, when it is put last, are *Aliquis*, some; *Equis*, who? To which some add *Nequis*, *Siquis* and *Numquis*; but these are more frequently read separately, *ne quis*, *siquis*, *num quis*. They are thus declined,

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.
<i>Aliquis</i> , <i>aliqua</i> , <i>aliquid</i> <i>vel</i> <i>aliquid</i> ,	<i>alicuius</i> ,	<i>alicui</i> .
<i>Equis</i> , <i>ecqua</i> <i>vel</i> <i>ecque</i> , <i>ecquod</i> <i>vel</i> <i>ecquid</i> ,	<i>ec cuius</i> ,	<i>ec cui</i> .
<i>Si quis</i> , <i>si qua</i> , <i>si quod</i> <i>vel</i> <i>si quid</i> ,	<i>si cuius</i> ,	<i>si cui</i> .
<i>Ne quis</i> , <i>ne qua</i> , <i>ne quod</i> <i>vel</i> <i>ne quid</i> ,	<i>ne cuius</i> ,	<i>ne cui</i> .
<i>Num quis</i> , <i>num qua</i> , <i>num quod</i> <i>vel</i> <i>num quid</i> ,	<i>num cuius</i> ,	<i>num cui</i> .

NOTE, That these and only these have *qua* in the Nom. Sing. Fem. and Nom. & Acc. Plur. Neut.

3. The

26 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

3. The Compounds of *Qui* are *Quicunque*, whosoever, *Quidam*, some, & *habet*, *Quavis*, any one, whom you please; and are thus declined,

Note.

Gen.

Dat.

Quicunque, *quicunque*, *quodcumque*; *cujuscumque*, *cumque*.

Quidam, *quidam*, *quoddam vel quiddam*; *cujusdam*, *cuidam*.

Quilibet, *quilibet*, *quodlibet vel quidlibet*; *cujuslibet*, *cuilibet*.

Quavis, *quavis*, *quodvis vel quidvis*; *cujusvis*, *cuvitis*.

Some of these are twice compounded, as *Equisname*, Who? *Uususquisque*, every one; The first is scarce declin'd beyond its Nomin. and the second wants the Plural.

Note. 1. That all these Compounds want the Vocative, except *Quisquis*, *Aliquis*, *Quilibet*, *Uususquisque*, and perhaps some others. *Vid. Vossium p. 331.*

Note. 2. That all these Compounds have seldom or never *quis* but *qui* in their Dat. and Abl. Plural.

Note. 3. That *Quidam* hath *quendam*, *quandam*, *quoddam vel quidle* in the Accus. Sing. and *quorundam*, *quarundam*, *quorundam* in the Co. Plur. & being put instead of *as* for the better Sound, as it is for the same reason in these Cases of *Idem*.

III. Some reckon among Compound Pronouns, *Ego*, *Tu* and *Sai* with *Ips*. But in the best Books they are generally read separately; which seems necessary because of *te ipse*, and *se ipse*, where the two Words are of different Cases.

IV. *Is* is compounded with the Syllable *dem*, and contracted into *Idem*, the same, which is thus declined,

Sing.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Idem</i> , <i>eadem</i> , <i>idem</i> ,	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>iidem</i> , <i>eadem</i> , <i>eadem</i> .
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ejusdem</i> , <i>ejusdem</i> , <i>ejusdem</i> ,	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>corundem</i> , <i>carundem</i> , <i>corundem</i> .
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eidem</i> , <i>eidem</i> , <i>eidem</i> ,	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cisdem vel iidem</i> .
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>cundem</i> , <i>candem</i> , <i>idem</i> ,	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>coldem</i> , <i>casdem</i> , <i>eadem</i> .
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>idem</i> , <i>eadem</i> , <i>idem</i> ,	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>iidem</i> , <i>eadem</i> , <i>eadem</i> .
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>codem</i> , <i>eadem</i> , <i>codem</i> :	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>cisdem vel iidem</i> .

V. Most of the other Compound Pronouns are only to be found in certain Cases and Genders, as,

1. Of *iste* and *bis* is compounded Nom. *Istibic*, *istbac*, *istbac vel istbic*, Acc. *Istibunc*, *istbanc*, *isthoc vel istbuc*. Abl. *Istboc*, *istbac*, *isthoc*. Nom. & Acc. Plur. Neut. *Istbac*.

2. Of *Ecce* and *Is* is compounded *Eccum*, *eccam*; Plur. *eccos*, *eccas*; and *Ecce & Ille*, *Ellum*, *ellam*; *ellos*, *ellas*; in the Accusatives.

3. Of *Modus* and *is*, *bis*, *iste* and *quis*, are compounded these Genitives *Ejusmodi*, *bujusmodi*, *istiujusmodi*, *cujusmodi*; and sometimes with the Syllable *co* put in the middle, *ejuscomodi*, *bujuscomodi*, &c.

4. Of *cum* and these Ablatives *me*, *te*, *se*, *nobis*, *vobis*, *qui* or *quo*, and *quibus*, are compounded *mecum*, *tēcum*, *secum*, *nobiscum*, *vobiscum*, *quicum* or *quocum* and *quibuscum*.

5. To these add some Pronouns compounded with these Syllabical Ablations, *met*, *te*, *ce*, *pte*, *cine*, to make their Signification more pointed & Emphatical; as, *egomet*, *tute*, *bujusce*, *meapte*, *biccine*.

REMARKS on ENGLISH PRONOUNS.

1. In the Nominative, or Foregoing State (as the English Grammarians call it) we use *I*, *Thou*, *He*, *She*, *We*, *Ye*, *They* & *Who*: But in the other Cases (which they name *The Following State*) we use *Me*, *Thee*, *Him*, *Him*, *Their*, *Them* and *Whom*.

2. Wh-

2. When we speak of a Person, we use *Who* & *Whom*, whether we ask a Question or not ; as, *Who did it ? The man who did it.* But if we speak of a Thing, with a Question we use *What* ; as, *What book is that ? Without a Question we use Which ; as, The Book which you gave me.* And then it is frequently understood ; as, *The Book you gave me.*

NOTE, That *What* is often used, even without a Question, instead of *The Thing which*, or *That which* ; as, *I know what you design.* i. e. *The thing which, or that which you design.* As on the contrary, when it refers to some particular thing mentioned before, we make use of *which* even with a Question ; as, *Give me the Book. Which Book ? Which of the Books ?*

3. This makes in the Plur. *These*, & *That makes Those.*

NOTE, That *That* is frequently used instead of *Who*, *Whom* & *Which* ; as, *The Man that told you, The Man that we saw, The Book that I lent you.*

4. We use *My*, *Thy*, *Her*, *Osr*, *Our*, *Their*, when they are joined with Substantives, or the Word *Own* ; and *Mine*, *Thine*, *Hers*, *Ours*, *Yours*, *Theirs*, when the Substantive is left out, or understood ; as, *My Book, This Book is mine*, &c.

NOTE, That with *Own*, or a Substantive beginning with a Vowel, we sometimes use *Mine* & *Thine* ; as, *My Eye*, or *Mine Eye*; *Thy own*, or *Thine own*.

5. We often use *Here*, *There*, *Where*, compounded with these Particles *Of*, *By*, *Upon*, *About*, *In*, *With*, instead of *This*, *That*, *Which* and *What*, with these same Particles ; as, *Hereof*, *Hereby*, *Hereupon*, *Hereabouts*, *Herein*, *Here-with* ; for *Of this*, *By this*, *Upon this*, *About this Place*, *In this*, *With this*, &c.

6. *Whose* and *Its* are Geniusives, instead of *Of whom*, *Of it* ; and it is a Fault to use *Its* for *'Tis* or *It is*, as some do.

CAP. III.

De Verbo.

M. **Q**uomodo declinatur Verbum ?

D. Per Voces, Modos, Tempora, Numeros & Personas.

M. Quot sunt Voces ?

D. Due ; *Activa* & *Passiva*.

M. Quot sunt Modi ?

D. Quatuor ; *Indicativus*, *Subjunctivus*, *Imperativus* & *Infinitivus*.

M. Quot sunt Numeri ?

CHAP. III.

Of Verb.

M. **H**ow is a Verb declined ?

S. By Voices, Moods, Tenses, Numbers and Persons.

M. How many Voices are there ?

S. Two ; the Active and Passive.

M. How many Moods are there ?

S. Four ; Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative and Infinitive.

M. How many Numbers are there ?

D. Due

D. Duo ; Singularis & Plurales.

M. Quot sunt Tempora ?

D. Quinque ; Praesens, Preteritum imperfectum, Præteritum perfectum, Præteritum plusquamperfectum & Futurum.

M. Quot sunt Personæ ?

D. Tres; Prima, Secunda, Tertia.

S. Two ; Singular and Plural.

M. How many Tenses are there ?

S. Five; the Present, the Preterit Imperfect, the Preterperfect, the Preterplusquamperfect and the Future.

M. How many Persons are there ?

S. Three; First, Second, Third.

A VERB is A part of Speech which signifies to be, to do, or to suffer. Or A Verb is that Part of Speech which expresses what is affirmed, or said of Things.

A Verb may be distinguished from any other Part of Speech these two Ways. 1. A Verb being the most necessary & essential Part of a Sentence, without which it cannot subsist, whatever Word with a Substantive Noun makes full Sense, or a Sentence, is a Verb; and that which does not make full Sense with it, is not a Verb. 2. Whatever Word with H. E. or IT SHALL before it, makes Sense, is a Verb; otherwise not.

I. In most Verbs there are two Forms or VOICES, the ACTIVE ending in o, and the PASSIVE in or. The former expresses what is done by the Nominative or Person before it: The latter what is suffered by, or done to the Nominative or Person before it; as, Amo, I love; Amor, I am loved.

II. The MOODS are divided into Finite & Infinite. The first three, the Indicative, Subjunctive & Imperative, are called FINITE, because they have certain fixed Terminations answering to certain Persons both singular and plural. The last is called INFINITE or INFINITE, because it is not confined to one Number or Person more than another.

1. The INDICATIVE Mood affirms or denies positively; as, Amo, I love, Non amo, I do not love: Or else asks a Question; as, An amas? Do thou love? An non amas? Dost thou not love?

2. The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood generally depends upon another Verb in the same Sentence, either going before or coming after; as, Si me amas, præcepta mea servate; If ye love me keep my Commandments.

[This Mood is commonly branched out into three Moods, viz. The Optative, the Subjunctive more strictly taken, and the Potential. 1. It is called OPTATIVE, when a Word importing a Wish, as Utinam, Would to God, O si, O if, goes before it. 2. It is named SUBJUNCTIVE, when it is subjoined to some other Conjunction or Adverb, or to Interrogatives becoming Indefinites. (See Chap. IX.) 3. It is called POTENTIAL, when the simple Affirmation of the Verb is also signified some Modification or Affection of it, such as a Power, Possibility, Liberty, Duty, Will, &c. The Signs whereof in our Language are May, Can, Might, Could, Would, Should, &c. Had (for Would have or Should have; as, They had repented, for would have)

it, because the Terminations of these Moods are the same, we have comprehended them all under one, viz. the Subjunctive, to which with small Difficulty they may be reduced. Otherwise, if we will constitute as many Moods as there are various Modifications, wherewith a Verb or Affirmation can be affected, we might multiply them to a far greater Number, and so we shall have a Prohibitive, Hortative, Precative, Concessive, Mandative, Interrogative Mood; now the Volitive & Debitive, which is commonly included in the Potential. As for the Optative, 'tis plain, that the Wish is not in the Verb itself, (which signifies only the Matter of it, or what is wished,) but in the Verb Optio, which is understood, with ut, uti or intinam, which really signify no more but That. And it is very probable that in like manner some Verb, or other Word, may also be understood to what is called the Potential Mood, such as, Ita est, Res ita est, fieri potest, ut, &c. As Vossius, Saenius, Perizonius and others do contend, [to Mr. Johnson is of another Opinion.]

3. The IMPERATIVE Mood commands, exhorts or intreats; as, Amas, ovethou.

4. The INFINITIVE Mood expresses the Signification of the Verb in general, and is Englished by TO; as, Amare, To love.

III. The TENSES are either Simple or Compound. The SIMPLE Tenses are the Present, the Preterperfect and Future.

1. The PRESENT

2. The PRETERPERFECT } Tense speaks of Time now { Present,
3. The FUTURE } Past.
To come.

The COMPOUND Tenses are the Preterimperfect, and the Preterplusimperfect.

4. The PRETERIMPERFECT refers to some past Time, and imports that the thing was present and unfinished then; as, Amabam, I did love, viz. then]

5. The PRETERPLUSQUAMPERFECT refers to some past Time, and imports that the thing was past at or before that Time; as, Scripsbam e. pistola, I had written a Letter. [i. e. before that Time.]

There is also a Compound Future Tense, called the FUTURE PERTINENT or EXACT, which refers to some Time yet to come, and imports that a thing as yet future shall be past and finished at or before that Time; as, Cum cœnabo tu leges, When I shall have supped, [i. e. after Supper] you shall read. This Future is only in the Subjunctive Mood, and the Sign of it is Shall have; as the other Future, called the FUTURE IMPERFECT, is only in the Indicative, which, when joined with another Future, imports that two things yet future shall be contemporary or exist at one time; as, Cum cœnoboto leges; When I shall sup, [i. e. in time of Supper] you shall read.

[And not only the Tenses, but even the MOODS themselves may be divided into SIMPLE and COMPOUND. I call the Indicative a Simple Mood, because it simply affirms something of its Person or Nominative. But the other three Moods I call Compound, because they have some other Ideas or Modifications of our Thoughts superadded to the simple Signification of the Verb, such as a Command, a Desire, Prohibition, Possibility, Liberty, Will, Duty, Wish, Concession, Supposition, Condition, Purpose, &c. These Modifications are either really included in the Verb; as a Command, &c. in the Imperative, and, according to Johnson, Power, Will, Duty, &c. in the Mood called Potential; or closely interwoven with it by the help of a Conjunction, Adverb or other Verb, express or understood: And because these also generally connect Tense,

they very frequently make all the Tenses of these Moods to become Compound Tenses. For with Respect to their Execution they are generally future; but with Respect to their Modal Signification they may fall under any of the other Distinctions of Time as well as the Future. Thus, for Instance, *Legi*, *Read* thus with Respect to its Execution, is future; but with Respect to the Command it is present. Again in *Legam*, I may or can read, the Action (if done at all) must be future, but the Liberty or Possibility are present; and so of others. Now, as it seems evident, that from these Modifications of the Verb, more than from the bare Execution of it, the Tenses of these Moods have at first been distinguished; so I am of Opinion, that bad Grammarians takes their Measures accordingly, they had not rendered this Matter so intricate as they have done. For some of them, as Sandius, &c. determining the Times of these Moods by the Execution only, have made the whole Imperative and Subjunctive of the Future time, and the Infinitive and Participle of all Times, or rather of no Time: Others, viz. Vossius, Linacre, Alvarus, Verepens, &c. the they will not go so far as Sandius, yet upon the same Grounds make Utinam legam the Future of the Optative; Utinam legerem the Present of it. By the same Rule they make a Future of the Potential is RIM; as, *Citius crediderim*, I should or shall sooner believe; And another of the Subjunctive is ISSE. M; as, *Juravit se illum statim interficendum*, nisi jurandum sibi dedisset, If he should not swear to him. Cic. But with all imaginable Dificulty to these great Men, I humbly think that these Tenses may be more easily accounted for, if we consider them as Compound, i. e. respecting one Time as to their Execution, and another as to the various Modifications superadded to, or involved in their Signification. To instance in the two last Examples, (because they seem to have the greatest Dificulty,) *Citius crediderim* seems to import these two Things, 1st. That I have and continue to have a Reason why I should not believe it; which Reason is of the Imperfect or past Time. And 2dly, That I shall sooner have believed it, than another Thing, with respect to which it shall be past. For there are a great many Examples where the Preterit in RIM hath the same Signification with the Future perfect in RO; as, *Si te inde exemerim*. Terent. *for exemerero*. See Vossius lib. V. cap. 15. and Aulus Gellius lib. XVIII, cap. 2. As to the other Example, the Composition of two Times is yet more evident; for the *jusjurandum dedisset* is posterior, and consequently future with respect to *Juravit*, yet it is prior, not only to the Time of the Relation, but to *Interficiendum*, to prevent which it behaved necessarily to be past: And so of others. The same Rule in my Opinion will likewise hold in the Infinitive and Participle, which of themselves have always one fixed Time; and when they seem to be of another Time, that is not in them, but in the Verb that goes before them, or comes after them: Thus, for Instance, *Scribere* is always present, or co-existent with the Verb before it; and *Scripsisse* is always prior to the same Verb, in all its Tenses, as *Dicit*, *dixit*, or *dicet*; *juvat*, *juvit*, or *juvabit* *Me scribere*, and *Me scripsisse*. So also the Particles have a fixt Time present, past or future; and when any part of the Verb sumis joined with them, they retain their own Times, and have those of that Verb superadded to them. But because there are innumerable Occasions of Speaking, wherein the nice Distinctions of Times are not necessary, therefore it frequently happens that they are promiscuously used: As I could evince by a great many Examples, not only in the Passive, but Active Voice, both in the Latin and other Languages, if there were place for it: Which yet in my Judgement does not hinder but that every part of a Verb hath formally and of its own Nature a certain Time simple or compound, to which it is fixed and determined.]

Part II. Chap. III. of Verb. 31

IV. There are two NUMBERS, the SINGULAR and the PLU.
LL, answering to the same Numbers of a Noun or Pronoun.

V. There are three PERSONS in each Number: The FIRST
hath of itself, the SECOND is spoken to, and the THIRD is spoken
The First hath only EGO and NOS, the Second only TU and VOS,
if the Third any Substantive NOUN Singular and Plural put before the
relative Terminations of the Verb, answering to them through all Voices,
Persons and Tenses.

[A Verb hath the same Respect to its Nominative that an Adjective hath to
Substantive; and therefore, as an Adjective hath not properly either Gender or
Numbers, but certain Terminations fitted for these of its Substantives; so a
Verb hath properly neither Persons nor Numbers, but certain Terminations an-
swering to the Persons & Numbers of its Nominative.]

NOTE, 1. That Ego & Tu are seldom excepted, because the Terminations
of the Verb immediately discover them, without any Hazard of a Mistake.

NOTE, 2. That if a Substantive be joined with Ego it becomes the first Per-
son, if with Tu the second.

NOTE, 3. That in the Continuation of a Discourse, the third Person is also
frequently understood, because easily known by what went before; and these
pronouns Ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, idem, quis and qui, do often supply the Place
it.

The ENGLISH SIGNS of the TENSES are,

Act. The Theme of the Verb, and oft -eth, or s; or for the greater
Emphasis, do, dost, doth, or does before it.

Past. am, art, is, be, been, with a Word in ed, en, t, &c.

Imperf. ed, edst, &c. or for the greater Emphasis, did, diest, doth, or does.

Past. was, wast, were, wert, with a Word in ed, en, &c.

Perf. Act. have, hast, hath, or has, with a Word in ed, en, &c. or as the Imp.

Past. have been, hast been, hath or has been, with a Word in ed, en, &c.

Plusq. Act. had, hadst, with a Word in ed, en, &c.

Past. had been, hadst been, with a Word in ed, en, &c.

Fut. Act. shall, will, shalt, wilt, with the Verb.

Past. shall be, will be, shalt be, wilt be, with a word in ed, en, &c.

The Subjunctive Mood Active has frequently these Signs,

Present, may or can;

Imperf. might, could, would, should;

Perfect, may have, or might have, could have, would have, should have.

Plusq. might have, could have, would have, should have or had.

Future, shall have.

The Passive has frequently the same Signs, with be, or been.

De Conjugationibus,

M. Quod sunt Conjugationes?

D. Quatuor; Prima, Secunda,
Tertia & Quarta.

M. Quæ sunt Notæ harum
Conjugationum?

Of Conjugations.

M. Hou many Conju-
gations are there?

S. Four; First, Second,
Third and Fourth.

M. What are the Marks of
these Conjugations?

D.

Rules of the Latin Tongue,

D.

Prima } A longum
Secunda } E longum
Tertia } E breve
Quarta } I longum

S.

First } A long
Second } E long
Third } E short
Fourth } I long

The common Characteristick or MARK by which these Conjugations are distinguished from one another is one of these three Vowels A, E, I, before the R.E. of the Infinitive Active; tho' they may also be known by these same Vowels in several other Parts of them; for A long is most frequent in the First, E long in the Second, E or I short in the Third, and I long in the Fourth. Only E before bas, bas, bat, &c. and before was and tis, and war and war, is always long in whatever Conjugation it is found.

But 'tis to be observed that the *Preterites* and *Supines*, and all the Parts derived from them (because of the great Inequality of their middle Syllable, and constant Agreement in their last Vowel, and in the Terminations arising from it, in all Conjugations,) cannot properly be said to be of any one Conjugation more than another; for there is nothing, for Example, in *Fricui*, *Ducui*, *Ehici*, *Amici*, or in *Fricium*, *Ducium*, *Ehicitum*, *Amictum*, or in the Parts that come from them, whereby to distinguish their Conjugations.

Prima Conjugatio, The First Conjugation.

A M O,

Vox Activa,

Principue Partes,

Pref. Indic. Perfect.

Am-o, am-avi,

I. INDICATIVUS Modus,

Præsens,

Sing. {
1 A M-o,
2 Am-as,
3 Am-at,

Plur. {
1 Am-amus,
2 Am-atis,
3 Am-ant,

Imperfictum,

Sing. {
1 Am-abam,
2 Am-abas,
3 Am-abat,

Plur. {
1 Am-abamus,
2 Am-abatis,
3 Am-abant.

TO LOVE.

The Active Voice.

The Principal Parts

Sup. Pref. Infin.

am-atum, am-are.

The INDICATIVE Modus

The Present.

1 I Love, or do love;
2 Thou lovest, or dost love;
3 He loveth, or doth love;
1 We love, or do love,
2 Te (or you) love, or do love,
3 They love, or do love.

The Imperfect.

1 I loved, or did love,
2 Thou lovedst, or didst love,
3 He loved, or did love;
1 We loved, or did love,
2 Te loved, or did love,
3 They loved, or did love.

P.
Pr.

Part II. Chap. III. of Gram.

Perfectum,

- { 1 Am-avi,
- { 2 Am-avisti,
- { 3 Am-avit,
- { 1 Am-avimus,
- { 2 Am-avistis,
- { 3 Am-averunt,
 vel -avere,

The Perfect.

- 1 I have loved, +
- 2 Thou hast loved,
- 3 He hath loved:
- 1 We have loved,
- 2 Ye have loved,
- 3 They have loved.

Plusquamperfectum,

- { 1 Am-averam,
- { 2 Am-averas,
- { 3 Am-averat,
- { 2 Am-averamus,
- { 2 Am-averatis,
- { 3 Am-averant.

The Plusquamperfect.

- 1 I had loved,
- 2 Thou hadst loved,
- 3 He had loved :
- 1 We had loved,
- 2 Ye had loved,
- 3 They had loved.

Futurum,

- { 1 Am-abo,
- { 2 Am abis,
- { 3 Am-abit,
- { 1 Am-abimus,
- { 2 Am-abitis,
- { 3 Am-abunt,

The Future.

- 1 I shall or will love,
- 2 Thou shalt or wilt love,
- 3 He shall or will love :
- 1 We shall or will love;
- 2 Ye shall or will love,
- 3 They shall or will love.

B FUNCTIVUS, The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

Præsens,

- 1 Am-em,
- 2 Am-es,
- 3 Am-et,
- 1 Am-emus,
- 2 Am-etis,
- 3 Am-ent,

The Present.

- 1 I may or can love,
- 2 Thou may'st or canst love,
- 3 He may or can love :
- 1 We may or can love,
- 2 Ye may or can love,
- 3 They may or can love:

The Imperfect.

- 1 Am-arem,
- 2 Am-ares,
- 3 Am-aret,
- 1 Am-aremus,
- 2 Am-aretis,
- 3 Am-arent,

- 1 I might, could, would or should
- 2 Thou mightest, couldst, wouldest, &c.
- 3 He might, could, would or should
- 1 We might, could, would or should
- 2 Ye might, could, would or should
- 3 They might, could, would or should

C

Per-

Or I loved, or did love, Thou lovest, or didst love, &c. as in the Imperf.

Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

Perfectum,			The Perfect.
Sing.	1 Am-averim,	1 I may have loved,	
	2 Am-averis,	2 Thou mayst have loved,	
	3 Am-averit,	3 He may have loved :	
Plur.	1 Am-averimus,	1 We may have loved,	
	2 Am-averitis,	2 Ye may have loved,	
	3 Am-averint,	3 They may have loved.	

Plusquamperfectum,			The Plusquamperfect.
Sing.	1 Am-avissim,	1 I might, could, would, &c. have or	
	2 Am-avisses,	2 Thou mightest, couldst, &c. have or	
	3 Am-avisset,	3 He might, could, &c. have or	
Plur.	1 Am-avissimus,	1 We might, could, &c. have or	
	2 Am-avissetis,	2 Ye might, could, &c. have or	
	3 Am-avissent,	3 They might, could, &c. have or	

Futurum,			The Future.
Sing.	1 Am-avero,	1 I shall have loved,	
	2 Am-averis,	2 Thou shalt have loved,	
	3 Am-averit,	3 He shall have loved :	
Plur.	1 Am-averimus,	1 We shall have loved,	
	2 Am-averitis,	2 Ye shall have loved,	
	3 Am-averint,	3 They shall have loved.	

IMPERATIVUS Modus, The IMPERATIVE Mo

Præsens, The Present.

Sing.		2 Am-a, vel am-ato,	2 Love thou, or do thou love,
		3 Am-ato,	3 Let him love :
Plur.		2 Am-ate, vel am-atote,	2 Love ye, or do ye love,
		3 Am-anto,	3 Let them love.

INFINITIVUS Modus, The INFINITIVE Mo

<i>Præf.</i>	Am-are,	Pres.	To love.
<i>Per.</i>	Am-avisse,	Perf.	To have, or had loved.
<i>Fut.</i>	Am-aturum [^{esse, vel} _{fuisse,}]	Fut.	To be about to love.

PARTICIPIA, The PARTICIPLE

Præf. Am-ans, Of the Present, Loving,
Fut. Am-atus, Of the Future, About to love.

GERUNDIA, The GERUNDS.

Nom. Am-andum, Nom. Loving,
Gen. Am-andi, Gen. Of loving,

1. Am-ando,
2. Am-andum,
3. Am-anda,

S U P I N A,

us, Am-atum,
terius, Am-atu,

Dat. To loving,
Acc. Loving,
Abl. From, in or by loving.

The SUPINES.

First, To Love.

Last, To love, or to be loved.

VOX PASSIVA,

The Passive Voice.

Amor, amatus, amari.

DICATIVUS Modus, The INDICATIVE Mood.

Præsens,

The Present.

- 1 Am-or,
- 2 Am-aris, *vel* am-are,
- 3 Am-atur,
- 1 Am-amur,
- 2 Am-amini,
- 3 Am-antur,

- 1 I am loved,
- 2 Thou art loved,
- 3 He is loved :
- 1 We are loved,
- 2 Ye are loved,
- 3 They are loved.

Imperfettum,

The Imperfect.

- 1 Am-abar,
- 2 Am-abaris, *vel* abare,
- 3 Am-abatur,
- 1 Am-abaniur,
- 2 Am-abamini,
- 3 Am-abantur,

- 1 I was
- 2 Thou wast [wert]
- 3 He was
- 1 We were
- 2 Ye were
- 3 They were

Perfectum,

The Perfect.

- Am-atus { 1 sum, *vel* fui,
- { 2 es, *vel* fuisti,
- { 3 est, *vel* fuit,
- Am-ati { 1 sumus, *v.* fuimus,
- { 2 estis, *vel* fuistis,
- { 3 sunt, fuerunt, fueris,

- 1 I have been
- 2 Thou hast been
- 3 He hath been
- 1 We have been
- 2 Ye have been
- 3 They have been

Plusquamperfectum.

The Plusquamperfect.

- Am-atus { 1 eram, *vel* fueram,
- { 2 eras, *vel* fueras,
- { 3 erat, *vel* fuerat,
- Am-ati { 1 eramus, *v.* fueramus,
- { 2 eratis, *v.* fueratis,
- { 3 erant, *v.* fuerant,

- 1 I had been
- 2 Thou hadst been
- 3 He had been
- 1 We had been
- 2 Ye had been
- 3 They had been

Futurum,

The Future.

- 1 Am-abor,
- 2 Am-aberis, *vel* abes,
- 3 Am-abitur,

- 1 I shall or will be
- 2 Thou shalt or will be
- 3 He shall or will be

1 Amabitur

Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

Plur. { 1 Am-abimur,
2 Am-abimini,
3 Am-abuntur,

1 We shall or will be
2 Ye shall or will be } loved
3 They shall or will be }

SUBJUNCTIVUS Modus, The SUBJUNCTIVE Mo

Præsens,

Sing. { 1 Am-er,
2 Am-eris, vel -ere,
3 Am-etur,
Plur. { 1 Am-emur,
2 Am-emini,
3 Am-entur,

The Present.

1 I may or can be
2 Thou may'st or canst be }
3 He may or can be }
1 We may or can be }
2 Ye may or can be }
3 They may or can be }

Imperfictum,

Sing. { 1 Am-arer,
2 Am-axeris, v. -arere,
3 Am-aretur,
Plur. { 1 Am-aremur;
2 Am-aremini,
3 Am-arentur,

I might, could, would, &c.
2 Thou mightest, couldst, &c.
3 He might, could, &c.
1 We might, could, &c.
2 Ye might, could, &c.
3 They might, could, &c.

Perfectum,

Sing. { 1 sim vel fuerim,
Am-atus { 2 sis vel fueris,
3 sit vel fuerit,
Plur. { 1 sumus vel fuerimus,
Am-ati { 2 sitis vel fueritis,
3 sint vel fuerint,

1 I may have been
2 Thou may'st have been
3 He may have been
1 We may have been
2 Ye may have been
3 They may have been

Plusquamperfectum.

Sing. { 1 essem vel fuisset,
Am-atus { 2 esse vel fuisses,
3 esset vel fuisset,
Plur. { 1 essemus vel fuissetis,
Am-ati { 2 essetis vel fuissetis,
3 essent vel fuissent,

I might, could, &c. have or
2 Thou mightest, &c. have or
3 He might, &c. have or
1 We might, &c. have or
2 Ye might, &c. have or
3 They might, &c. have or

Futurum,

Sing. { 1 fuerò,
Am-atus { 2 fueris,
3 fuerit,
Plur. { 1 fuerimus,
Am-ati { 2 fueritis,
3 fuerint,

I shall have been
2 Thou shalt have been
3 He shall have been
1 We shall have been
2 Ye shall have been
3 They shall have been

IMPERATIVUS Modus,

The IMPERATIVE Mo

Præsens,

{ 2 Am-are vel am-ator,
3 Am-ator,

The Present.

2 Be thou loved,
3 Let him be loved :

Part II. Chap. III. of Clerb.

37

{ 2 Am-amini,
3 Am-antor,

2 Be ye loved.
3 Let them be loved.

INFINITIVUS Modus,

The INFINITIVE Mood.

Am-ari,

To be loved.

Am-atum [^{esse, vel}
^{fuisse.}]

To have, or had been loved.

Am-atum iri,

To be about to be loved.

PARTICIPIA,

The PARTICIPLES.

perfecti temporis, Am-atus, -a, -um, Of the Perfect, Loved.

turi, Am-andus, -a, -um, Of the Fut. To be loved.

Secunda Conjugatio.

V O X ACTIVA.

Doceo, docui, doctum, docere;

INDICATIVUS.

Sing.

Plur.

D	1	2	3	1	2	3
Oc-eo, -es,	-et;	-emus,	-etis,	-ent.		
Doc-ebam, -ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.		
Doc-ui, -uisti,	-uit;	-uimus,	-uistis,	[^{-uerunt} ^{-bent.}]		
Doc-ueram, -ueras,	-uerat;	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.		
Doc-ebo, -ebis,	-ebit;	-ebimus,	-ebitis,	-ebunt.		

S U B F U N C T I V U S.

Doc-eam, -eas,	-eat;	-eamus,	-eatig,	-eant.
Doc-erem, -eres,	-eret;	-eremus,	-eretis,	-erent.
Doc-uerim, -ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis	-uerint.
Doc-uissim, -uisses,	-uisset;	-uissimus,	-uissetis,	-uissent.
Doc-uero, -ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

I M P E R A T I V U S.

Doc	{ -e, -eto,	-ete -etote	-ento.

INFINITIVUS. SUPINA. PARTICPIA. GERUNDIA.

Doc-ere.	1. Doc-tum.	Pr. Do-cens.	Doc-endum.
Doc-uisse.	2. Doc-tu.	Fut. Doc-turus.	Doc-endi.
Doc-thrum esse v. fuisse.			Doc-endo.

Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

V O X P A S S I V A.

Doc-eor, doctus, doceri.

I N D I C A T I V U S.

Sing.

Plur.

Pr. Doc-eor, [^{eris,}
_{eris,}] -etur; -emur, -emini, -entur

Im. Doc-ebar, [^{ebaris,}
_{ebare,}] -ebatur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur

Pr. Doc-ebor, [^{ebenis,}
_{ebere,}] -ebitur; -ebimur, -ebimini, -ebuntur

S U B F U N C T I V U S.

Pr. Doc-eas, [^{earis,}
_{earis,}] -eatur; -eamur, -eamini, -eantur

Im. Doc-erer, [^{erens,}
_{erent,}] -eretur; -eremur, -eremini, -erentur

I M P E R A T I V U S.

Pres. Doc [^{eae,}
_{etor,}] -etor; -emini, -entor.

I N F I N I T I V U S.

P A R T I C I P I A.

Pres. Doc-eri.

Perf. Doc-tum esse v. fuisse.

Fut. Doc-tum iri.

Per. Doc-tus, -a, -um

Fut. Doc-endus, -a, -um

Tertia Conjugatio.

V O X A C T I V A.

Lego, legi, lectum, legere.

I N D I C A T I V U S.

Sing.

Plur.

Pr. Leg-o, -is -it; -imus, -itis, -unt.

Im. Leg-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis -ebantur

Perf. Leg-i, -isti, -it; -imus, -istis, -erunt,

Pl. Leg-eram, -eras, -erat; -eramus, -eratis, -erantur

Pr. Leg-am, -es, -et; -emus, -etis, -ent.

S U B F U N C T I V U S.

Pres. Leg-am, -as, -at; -amus, -atis, -antur

Imp. Leg-erem, -eres, -eret; -eremus, -eretis, -erentur

Part II. Chap. III. of Cteib.

59

- Pr. Leg-erim, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.
 Pf. Leg-issem, -isses, -isset; -issemus, -issetis, -issent.
 F. Leg-ero, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.

IMPERATIVUS.

- Pr. Leg $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} -e \\ -ito, \end{array} \right.$ -ito; $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} -ite, \\ -itote, \end{array} \right.$ -unto.

INFINITIVUS. SUPINA. PARTICIPIA. GERUNDIUM.

Pr. Leg-ere,	1. Lec-tum.	Pr. Leg-ens,	Leg-endum,
Pf. Leg-isse, Fut. Lec-tum esse vel fuisse.	2. Lec-tu.	Fu. Lec-turus.	Leg-endi, Leg-endo.

VOX PASSIVA.

- Legor, lectus, legi.

INDICATIVUS.

Sing.	Plur.
Pr. Leg-or,	[-eris, -ere, -itur; -imur, -imini, -untur.
Im. Leg-ebar,	[-ebaris, -ebare, -ebatur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.
Fu. Leg-ar,	[-etis, -ere, -etur; -emur, -emini, -entur.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pras. Leg-ar,	[-aris, -are, -atur; -amur, -amini, -antur.
Imp. Leg-erer,	[-eroris, -erere, -eretur; -eremur, -eremini, -crentur.

IMPERATIVUS.

- Pras. Leg [-ere, -itor; -imini, -untor.

INFINITIVUS.

INF.	PARTICIPIA.
Pras. Leg-i,	Perf. Lec-tus, -a, -um.
Pf. Lec-tum esse, vel fuisse,	Fut. Leg-endus, -a, -um.
Fut. Lec-tumiri.	

Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

Quarta Conjugatio.

V O X A C T I V A.

Audio, audivi, auditum, audire.

I N D I C A T I V U S.

Sing.

Plur.

<i>Pr.</i>	A ud-io, -i -is, -it ; -im -is, -it;	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Im.</i>	Aud-iebam, -iebas, -iebat ; -iebam -iebas, -iebat;			-iebam -iebas, -iebat;		
<i>Pt.</i>	Aud-ivi, -ivisti, -ivit ; -ivimus, -ivistis, -ive -ivimus, -ivistis, -ive;					
<i>Pl.</i>	Aud-iveram, -iveras, -iverat; -iveramus, -iveratis, -ivera -iveramus, -iveratis, -ivera;					
<i>Fu.</i>	Aud-iam, -ies, -iet ; -iemus, -ietis, -ient.					

S U B F U N C T I V U S.

<i>Pr.</i>	Aud-iam, -ias, -iat ; -iamus, -iatis, -iant.
<i>Im.</i>	Aud-irem, -ires, -iret ; -iremus, -iretis, -irent.
<i>Pt.</i>	Aud-iverim, -iveris, -iverit; -iverimus, -iveritis, -iveri
<i>Pl.</i>	Aud-ivissem, -ivisses, -ivisset; -ivissemus, -ivissetis, -ivissem
<i>Fu.</i>	Aud-ivero, -iveris, -iverit; -iverimus, -iveritis, -iveri

I M P E R A T I V U S.

<i>Pr.</i>	Aud $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} -i, \\ -ito, \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} -ite, \\ -itote, \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} -iunto, \\ -iunto, \end{array} \right.$
------------	---	---	---

I N F I N I T I V U S. S U P I N A. P A R T I C I P I A. G E R U N D I A

<i>Pr.</i>	Aud-ire.	$\left \begin{array}{l} 1. Aud-itum. \\ 2. Aud-itu. \end{array} \right.$	<i>Pr.</i>	Aud-iens.	$\left \begin{array}{l} Audientum. \\ Fu. Aud-iturus. \end{array} \right.$	<i>Audiendum.</i>
<i>Pt.</i>	Aud-ivisse.		<i>Pt.</i>	Aud-ivissem.		<i>Audiendi.</i>
<i>Fu.</i>	Aud-iturum esse v. fuisse.		<i>Fu.</i>	Aud-iturus.		<i>Audiendo.</i>

V O X P A S S I V A.

Audior, auditus, audiri.

I N D I C A T I V U S.

Sing.

Plur.

<i>Pr.</i>	Aud-iор, $\left[\begin{array}{l} -ioris, \\ -ire, \end{array} \right]$	-itur ; -imur, -imini	-iuntur.
<i>Im.</i>	Aud-iebar, $\left[\begin{array}{l} -iebaris, \\ -iebare, \end{array} \right]$	-iebatur; -iebamur, -iebamini, -ieban	
<i>Fu.</i>	Aud-iар, $\left[\begin{array}{l} -ioris, \\ -iere, \end{array} \right]$	-ietur ; -iemur, -iemini, -ientur.	

S U B F U N C T I V U S.

<i>Prsf.</i>	Aud-iар, $\left[\begin{array}{l} -iari, \\ -iare, \end{array} \right]$	-iatur ; -iamur, -iamini, -iantur.	
<i>Imp.</i>	Aud-irer, $\left[\begin{array}{l} -irem, \\ -irere, \end{array} \right]$	-iretur; -iremur, -iremini, -irentur	I M.

Part II: Chap. III. of Verb.

IMPERATIVUS.

Pres. Aud*[ire, itor]*; -itor; -imini, -iunctor.

INFINITIVUS.

Pres. Aud-iri,

Per. Aud-itum [*effe, finisse*,

Fut. Aud-itum iri,

PARTICIPIA.

Per. Aud-itus, -a, -um.

Fut. Aud-iendus, -a, -um.

Note, That in the Examples of the Second, Third and Fourth Conjugations, we have omitted such Parts of the Passive Voice as are supplied by the Participle perfect with the Verb Sum, viz. the Perfect and Plusquamperfect of the Indicative, and the Perfect, Plusquamperfect and Future of the Subjunctive, as being the same in all Conjugations with the Example of the First, the Change of the Participle only excepted: But 'tis carefully to be observed, that the Participle being an Adjective must agree in Gender, Number and Case with its Substantive, or (which is the same thing) with the Person before it.

REMARKS shewing when a LATIN Verb is to be rendered otherwise in ENGLISH than in the foregoing Example.

When the Continuation of a Thing is signified, the English Verb may be varied in all its Tenses by the Participle in ING, with the Verb AM; as,

Pres. I am reading,

Imp. I was reading,

Perf. I have been reading,

Plur. I had been reading,

Fut. I shall be reading,

{ for } I read.
I did read.
I have read.
I had read.
I shall read,

So likewise in the Passive Voice, The house is building, Domus adificatur. The lesson was prescribing, Lectio prescribatur. Sometimes it is set before the Participle; as, While the house is a building, It is a king, He is a dying.

2. When a Question is asked, the Nominative Case or Person is set after the Verb, or the Sign of the Verb; as, Love I? Do I love? Can I love?

3. We have made THOU the second Person Singular, to distinguish it from the Plural. But it is customary with us (as also with the French and others) tho' we speak but to one particular Person, to use the Plural YOUE; and never THOU, but when we address ourselves to Almighty God, or otherwise signify Familiarity, Disdain or Contempt.

Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

4. The Perfect of the Indicative is often Englished as the Imperfect; *Nunquam amavi hunc hominem*, I never loved, or did love this man. See Train of Examples in Ovid. *Metamorph. lib. I.* from *ver. 21 to 39.*

5. The PERFECT Tense is frequently Englished by HAD after *Antequam*, *Postquam*, *Ubi* or *Ut* for *Postquam*; as, *Postquam superavisse Isthmum*, After we had [were] pass'd over the Isthmus, *Ovid. Hec ubi dedit*, When he had spoken these Words, *Liv. Ut mesalatavit, statim R*em *profectus est*, After he had saluted me &c. *Cic.*

6. We have chosen MAY, CAN, MIGHT, COULD, &c. for the English of the SUBJUNCTIVE Mood, because these are the most frequent Signs of it, and distinguish it best from other Moods; but very often is the same with the Indicative, save only that it hath some Conjunction Indefinite Word before it, such as, If, Seeing, Least, That, Although, I will &c.; as, *Si amem*, If I love, *Ne amem*, Least I love, *Causaest cur amem*. In the cause why I love, *Ovid.* And frequently it hath both; as, *Oro ut amem*, entreat that you may love, *Idem.*

7. The PRESENT of the Subjunctive, after *Quasi*, *Tanquam*, & the like, sometimes Englished as the Imperfect; as, *Quasi intelligant quals sit*, As they understood, &c. *Cic.*

8. When a Question is asked, the Present of the Subjunctive is frequently Englished by SHALL or SHOULD; as, *Eloquar, an fileam?* Shall I speak or be silent. *Virg. Singula quid referam?* Why should I mention every Thing. *Ovid.* Likewise after *Non est quod*; as, *Non est (supple causa) quod eas*, There is no Reason why you should go, or, You need not go. Sometimes it is Englished by WOULD; as, *In facinus jurasse putes*, You would think he had sworn to [commit] wickedness. *Ovid.*

9. We have Englished the PERFECT of the Subjunctive in RIM MAY HAVE; (as, *Ne frastra batales viri venerint*, That such Men these may not have come in vain, *Cic. Forsan audieris*, You may perhaps have heard it:) to distinguish it from the Present and PLUSQUAMPERFECT, the Signs of which it is also most frequently Englished; as, *Ut sic dixim*, That I may so speak. *Ubi ego audiverim?* Where should I have heard? *Unus homo tantas strages ediderit?* Could one Man make so great a Slaughter. *Virg. Fortasse errarim*, Perhaps I might be in an Error. *Plin. Oratores qui viderim peritisimi*, The ablest Orators I have seen, or I could see, *Quintil.*

10. This Perfect in RIM sometimes inclines very much to a future Signification, and then it is Englished by SHOULD, WOULD, COULD, CAN, WILL, SHALL; as, *Citius crediderim*, I should sooner believe, *In Libenter audierim*, I would gladly hear, *Cic. Ciceronem cuicunque consenserim*, I could easily match Cicero with any of them, *Quid Non facile dixerim*, I cannot well tell, *Cic. Nec tamen excluderim dicere*. And yet I will not exclude others, *Plin. Si paululum modo quid te sagero perierim*. If you but trip in the least, I shall be ruined, *Ter.* But these ways of speaking, tho' indeed they respect the Future as to the Execution, yet they seem also to look a little beyond it, to a time when their Future shall be past; and so come near in Signification to the future in R.O.

11. The Perfect of the Subjunctive after *Quasi*, *Tanquam* and the like may sometimes be Englished by HAD; as, *Quasi affuerim*, As if I had been present, *Plant. Perinde ac si jam vicerint*, As if they had already overcome, &c.

12. The PLUSQUAMPERFECT in ISSEM is sometimes Englished SHOULD; as, *Imperaret quod vellet*, quidcumque imperaveret, se efficeret. He might command what he pleased, whatever he commanded [should]

Part II. Chap. III. of Verb. 43

and they would do, *Ces. Faudictum est his legibus, ut ejus populi civis certamine vicissent, is alteri imperaret*, An agreement was made on these terms, that that People whose Countrymen shold be victorious in that Commune, should have the Sovereignty over the other, *Liv.* And this happens when a Thing is signified as future at a certain past time referred to; and commonly takes place, when what was formerly said directly, is afterwards recited directly; as, *Ne dubitas, dabitur quodcumque optaris*, Doubt not, whatsoever thou shalt choose shall be given thee, *Ovid.* *Sol Phaebronis factum se esse exiit quicquid optasset*, The Sun told Phaebron that he would do whatsoever he should choose, *Cic.* Where it is worth noticing, That what was the Future of the Subjunctive in the direct Speech, becomes the Plusquamperfect in the Indirect Recital of it. See *Turner's Exercises* Pag. 22 &c. But as we have said, *Ag. 30*, the Plusquamperfect, notwithstanding its coming in the place of a Future, still retains its own proper compound Time, that is, it was prior to a thing now past at the Time of the Recital by Ciceron, tho' it was future when first spoken by the Sun. And therefore there is no Reason for making this Termination *item* a Future Tense, as Mr. *Turner* does.

13. Tho' the proper English of the FUTURE in RO be SHALL HAVE, yet generally the HAVE, or the SHALL, and frequently both, are omitted; as, *Qui Antonium oppresserit, is bellum consecrit*, He who shall cut off Antony, shall put an end to the War, *Cic.* *Haud loquaciam donec perfecero hoc*, I will not give over till I have effected this, *Ter.* *Si negaverit*, If he denies it, *Cic.* Sometimes it is Englished by WILL; as, *Vixerit fortasse quis*, Some body will perhaps say, *Cic.* *Aut consolando, aut confilio, aut rejuvero*, I will affist you either by comforting you, or with Counsel, or with Money, *Idem.* But tho' we thus render the Future in RO in our Language, and tho' which is more material) very frequently it and the Future of the Indicative are used promiscuously, yet I cannot be perswaded that in any Instance the formal Significations of these are the same, as Mr. *Johnson* contends, *P. 339.* but still think with the great *Wossius* that the Future in RO is always a Future Perfect, that is, that there is a Time intimated whence a thing yet future shall be finished or past; and that even when a Future of the Indicative is joined with it, which in order of Time should be done before it; as, *Pergratum mibi feceris si disputabis*, *Cic.* For what hinders that we may not faintly hint at the Finishing of an Action yet future, without formally considering the Finishing of another Action on which it depends; and on the contrary? But if the promiscuous usage of Tenses one for another be sufficient to make them formally the same, then we shall confound all Tenses, and overthrow the very Arguments Mr. *Johnson* makes use of against *Santius* with respect to the Tenses of the Infinitive.

14. The TO of the INFINITIVE is generally omitted after *May*, *Can*, *Might*, *Would*, *Could*, (which are sometimes Verbs themselves, and not the bare Signs of them.) also after *Must*, *Rid*, *Dare*, *Let*, *Maks* or *Cause*.

15. But what is most to be regarded in the Infinitive is, that when it hath an Accusative before it, it is commonly Englished as the Indicative Mood, the Particle THAT being sometimes put before it, but often understood. And it is carefully to be remarked that the same Tenses of the Infinitive are differently Englished, according as the preceding Verb varies its Tenses; as will appear in the following Scheme.

<i>Dicit me scribere,</i>	He says [that] I write.
<i>Dixit me scribere,</i>	He said [that] I was writing.
<i>Dicet me scribere,</i>	He shall say [that] I am writing.

Dick

Dicit me scripsisse,	He says [that] I wrote, or did write;
Dixit me scripsisse,	He said [that] I had written.
Dicet me scripsisse,	He shall say [that] I have written, or did write.
Dicit me scripturum [esse],	He says [that] I will write.
Dixit me scripturum [esse],	He said [that] I would write.
Dicet me scripturum [fuisse],	He shall say [that] I will write.
Dicit me scripturum fuisse,	He says [that] I would have written.
Dixit me scripturum fuisse,	He said [that] I would have written.
Dicet me scripturum fuisse,	He shall say [that] I would have written.

It will be of great Use to accustom the Learner to render the Infinitive after this manner, both in English and Latin, especially after he has been taught something of Construction: And then to cause him vary the Accusative *Me* into *Te*, *se*, *illum*, *bominem*, *feminas*, &c. and these again into the Plural *Nos*, *vos*, *se*, *illos*, *bomines*, *feminas*, &c. But he must be careful to make the Participles agree with them in Gender, Number, and Case.

NOTE, 1. That when the preceding Verb is of the Present or Future Tense, the Fut. of the Infinitive is rendered by SHALL or WILL; and when it is of the Perfect Tense, the Fut. of the Infinitive is rendered by WOULD, as in the Examples above; and sometimes by SHOULD; as *Dixi te scriturum esse*, I said that you should know.

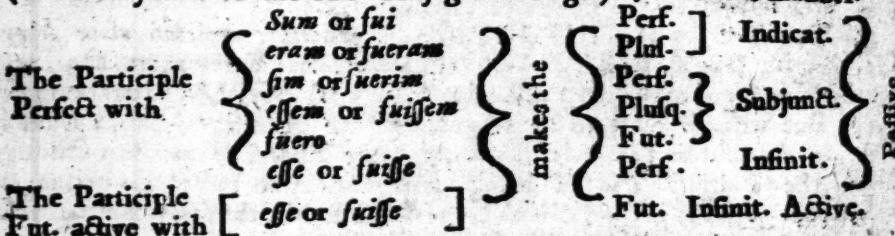
NOTE, 2. That when the preceding Verb is of the Imperfect or Plusquamperfect Tenses, the English of the Infinitive is the same as when it is of the Perfect.

16. The Perfect of the Indicative and Subjunctive Passive, made up with *SUM* or *SIM*, are Englished by AM, ART, IS, ARE, instead of HAVE BEEN, when the thing is signified to be just now past; as, *Vulneratum sum*, I am wounded; *Opus finitum est*, The Work is finished. *Contempora mutata sunt*, Since the Times are changed.

17. When it is made up by *fui*, it is frequently Englished by WAS, WAST, WERE, WERT; as, *Roma fuit capta*, Rome was taken: As also what is called the Plusquamperfect, with *eram* & *essem*; as, *Labor factus erat*, The Labour was finished. *Si Labor finitus esset*, If the Labour were finished.

II. REMARKS on the LATIN Conjugations.

1. A Great Part of the Passive Voice, and some of the Active, is made up of two of its own Participles and the Auxiliary Verb *SUM* (of which you have the full Conjugation Page 51) after this manner.



2. Having Page 30. laid it down as a probable Opinion, that every part of a Verb, with all its Participles, have a certain fixt Time, simple or compound, which they formally and of their own nature signify; it will perhaps be here expected that I should account for that great Variety

arity that is found in the *Passive* Voice. To put this matter in the
 earnest Light I am able, I must premise another Division of the
 Tenses into PASSING and PAST; or into such as import the Contin-
 uance of an Action or Thing, without Regard to the Ending or Finishing
 of it; and such as import that the thing is finished (or to be finished)
 and done. Of the first sort are the *Present*, *Imperfect* and *Future imperf.*
&; of the second sort are the *Perfect*, *Plusquamperfect* and *Future Per-*
fect. See Page 29. From this Division of the Tenses, together with what
 we have formerly said, we are furnished with an easy Method of Disting-
 uishing all the Parts of the *Passive*. Thus, for Instance, let the Subject of
 Discourse be the Building of an House, 1. When I say *Dominus adificatur*,
 mean that it is just now a building, but not finished. 2. When *Edifi-
 cabatur*, that it was then, or at a certain past Time, a building, but
 not then finished. 3. *Edificabitur*, that some Time hence it shall be
 building, without any formal Regard to the finishing of it. But when
 make use of the *Participle perfect*, I always signify a thing compleated
 and ended; but with these Subdistinctions. 1. *Edificate est*; I mean sim-
 ply, That it is finished, without any Regard to the Time when. 2.
Edificate fuit; it is finished, and some Time since interveened. 3. *Edi-
 ficata erat*; it was finished at a certain past Time refer'd to, with
 which it was contemporary. 4. *Edificate fuerat*; it was finished before
 a certain Time past refer'd to, to which it was prior. 5. *Edificate es-
 sit*; it shall be finished some Time hereafter, either without Regard to
 a particular Time when, or with Respect to a certain Time yet future,
 with which its Finishing shall be contemporary. 6. And lastly, *Edifica-
 ta fuerit*, it shall be finished and past before another Thing yet future,
 to which its Finishing shall be prior. And thus we have nine different
 Times, or Complications of Times, without confounding them with one
 another. But then how comes it to pass that these are so frequently used
 promiscuously? I answer, that this proceeds from one or more of these
 four Reasons. 1. Because it very frequently happens in Discourse that
 we have no Occasion particularly to consider their various Relations and
 Complications of Times; and 'tis the same thing to our Purpose whether
 the Thing is or was done, or a doing; or whether it was done just now,
 or some Time ago; or whether another Thing was (or shall be) contem-
 porary with, or prior to it: And the Matter being thus, we reckon our-
 selves at Liberty to take several parts of the Verb at Random, as being
 secure not only of being understood, but also that in these Circumstances
 whatever we pitch on, even when examined by the Rules above, shall
 be found literally true. 2. It is usual with us to state our selves as present
 with, and as it were Eye-witnesses of the Things we relate, tho' really they
 were transacted long before; whence 'tis that we frequently use the Pre-
 sent instead of some past Time. 3. 'Tis to be remarked that there are
 some Verbs the Action whereof is in some Sense finished when begun;
 in which Case it will sometimes be all one whether we use the Passing
 or Past Tenses. And 4. The present Tense (which strictly speaking is
 gone before we pronounce it) is generally taken in a larger Acceptation, and
 sometimes used for the Future, when we signify that the Execution is
 very near, or (according to *Perizonius*) when together with the Action
 we take in also the Preparation to it. The Brevity we are confin'd to
 will not allow us to illustrate these Things with Examples. But by them
 I think we may account for the promiscuous Usage of the Tenses in both
 Voices

Voices, and what cannot be reduced to these seems to be an Abuse of the Language, and being very rarely to be met with, and perhaps among the Poets, ought not to be made a common Standard. I shall only add for a Proof that these Tenses are not always to be used indiscriminately, that when we signify a thing to be just now finished, we can use *Fut.*, or *fuerim*, or *fuisse*, but *Sum*, *sim* and *esse*.

3. Whether the Learner should be obliged to get by Heart these Parts of the Passive that are supplied by **SUM**, or if they should be referred to Construction (to which they seem more naturally to belong) I leave the Discretion of the Master, and therefore have put them in a small Character.

4. Besides these Parts which are thus made up, all the other Parts may be resolved into its own Particles and the Verb **Sum**, tho their significations are not precisely the same; as,

*Amo, amabam, amavi, amaveram, amabo,
Sum amans, eram amans, fuera amans, ero amans, sum amans*

*Amor, amabar, amaber, amer, amarer,
Sum amatus, eram amatus, ero amatus, amatus sim, amatus esse.*

5. The Participle in **RUS** with the Verb **SUM** is frequently used instead of the Future of the Indicative, especially if Purpose or Intention be signified; as, *Profectus sum*, or *Proficisci* car, I will go, or I am to go and with *Sim* and *esse* instead of the Future Imperfect, or Plusquamperfect of the Subjunctive; as, *Non dubito quin sit facturus*, I doubt not but he will do it. *Non dubitavi quin esset facturus*, I doubted not but he would do it; and not *quoniam fecerit*, or *faceret*, or *fecisset*.

6. We have not joined **ERO** with **FUERO** for the Future of the Subjunctive, because we thought it incongruous to couple Words of different Moods: Tho. it must be owned that it comes nearer in Signification to the Fut. of the Subjunctive, than that of the Indicative; as, Ovid. *Quum victus erit*, is much the same, as *Victus fuerit*: And so these ancient Lawiers, Scavola, Brutus and Mamilius understood the Words of the Atinian Law, *Quod subreptum erit, ejus rei eterna auctoritas est*. But that a Preterite Time is there insinuated, is owing not to the Word *erit*, but to the Preterite participle with which it is joyned, as they learnedly argue. See *Aulus Gellius lib. XVII. cap. 7.*

7. We have omitted the Termination **MINOR** in the second person Plural of the Imperative, not thinking it fit to make that an ordinary Standard (as the Common Rudiments do) which is to be found only once or twice in *Plautus*, *Epid. 5, 2, Facto opere arbitraminor.* *An. Plead. 2, 2: Pariter progradimino.*

8. For the same Reason we have excluded the ancient Termination **ASSO** in the Future Subjunctive, as *Excantasso* in the Laws of the Tables, *Lerasso* in *Eunius*, *Abjurasso*, *Invitasso*, *Cenasso*, *Irritasso*, *Servasso*, &c. in *Plautus*; for *Excantavero*, *Leravero*, &c. to which may be added *Licesbit*, *Idem*; *Prohibebit*, *Cic.* for *Licuerit*, *prohibuerit*; as also *Jusso* for *Juvens* in that of *Virg. Aen. 1. v. 467.*

Catena, quis iusso, mecum manus inferat arma.

The *Vossius* will have it only a Syncope, because others change also the *s* into *t*. But that was impossible here, unless he would joyn three or four *s*'s together; and I know no such Syncope used by any other Author.

Part II. Chap. III. of Verb. 47

Upon the same account we have omitted the Future of the Infinitive PASSERE formed from ASSO; as, *Impetrassere, reconciliassere, expugnassere, plautus*; for *impetraturum esse*, &c.

10. Tho we frequently meet with *amaturus* and *amatus esse vel fuisse*, in the Nominative; as, *Dicitur amaturus esse*, yet we have contented ourselves with the Accusative *amaturnum* and *amatum*, as most common, leaving the Distinction between these to Construction.

11. The Future of the Infinitive Passive is made up of the First S. and IRE the Infinitive Passive of EO: And therefore it is not varied Numbers and Genders as the Parts made up of the Participle with SUM.

12. But the Supine with IRE is not the Future of the Infinitive Active, as some teach; for such Phrases as these, *Amatum ire, Doctum ire*, rather of the Present, than Future Tense.

13. The Participle in DUS with *esse* and *fuisse*, is not properly the Future of the Infinitive Passive, as is commonly believed: For it does so much import Futurity, as Necessity, Duty, or Merit. For there is great Difference between these two Sentences, *Dicit literas a se scripendas*, and *Dicit literas a se scribendas esse*; the first signifying That a Letter will be written by him, or, That he will write a Letter; and the second, That a Letter must be written by him, or, He is obliged to write a Letter. For tho *Sanctius* and *Messieurs de Port Royal* contend that this Participle is sometimes used for simple Futurity, yet I think *Perizanis* and *Johnson* have clearly evinced the contrary.

14. It is to be noted, That the Imperative Mood wants the first Person both Singular and Plural, because no Man can or needs command of himself: Or if he does, he must justify himself out of the first to the second Person, as in that of *Catullus*, *At tu Catulle definitus dura*.

15. The Present of the Subjunctive is most frequently used instead of the Imperative, especially in forbidding, after *Ne, nemo, nullus, &c.* as, *Valeas, Farewell, for Vale. Ne facias, Do it not, rather than Ne fac*. And sometimes the Future of the Subjunctive; as, *Tu videris, See you to it*; *dixeris, Don't say it*. And sometimes also the Future of the Indicative; as, *Non occides, Thou shalt not kill, for Ne occide, or occidito. Sed alebis meaque negotia videbis*, Cic. i. e. *Sed uals meaque negotia videferes ergo hoc 'go nuncius ibis Pelida genitori, Virg. i. e. rejer 'go its*. But 'tis to be remarked that none of these are proper Imperatives; for the first is understood *ero, rogo, peto*, or the like, with *ut*, as also to the second, with *ut* understood, or *me* express; and the third is only a Command by Consequence, because of the Authority, Influence or Power of the Speaker. For which Reason, and to keep the Moods from interfering with one another, we have excluded these from the Imperative: tho the common Rudiments take in the first, and *Alvarus* the second and third. However 'tis observable that we shew most Civility and Respect when we use the Subjunctive, and most Authority by the Future of the Indicative, and NTO of the Imperative; which last is the ordinary Strain in which Laws are delivered. But this Rule is not always followed.

16. The RIS of the second Persons Passive is more usual than RE; and ERUNT of the Perfect of the Indicative Active than ERE; especially in prose, in which if a Vowel follow, they are very rarely to be met with.

Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

III. REMARKS upon ENGLISH Verbs.

AN English Verb hath only two Tenses, distinguished by different Terminations, and both in the Active Voice, viz. The Present and Preterite. The Present is the Verb it self, and the Preterite is commonly made by adding *ed* to *e*, or *t* when it ends in *e*, as, *Fill*, filled; *Lore*, loved.

1. All the other Parts of the Active, and the whole Passive is made up of the auxiliary Verbs *Do*, *Hwe*, *Shall*, *Will*, *May*, *Can* and *Awe*; as in Page 31, and in the Example *To love*, Page 32, &c.

2. An English Verb hath different Terminations for the Persons of the Singular Number. The Present hath three or four. The first Person is the Verb it self; the second ends in *-st*, or *-th*, the third in *eth*, *-es*, or *s*. The Preterite hath only two; the first commonly ending in *ed*, and the Second in *est* or *-t*. But the third Person Singular of the Preterite, and all the Persons Plural, before it and the Present, cannot otherwise be distinguished than by the Nominatives before them; which therefore can never be omitted, as in the Latin.

3. We have two Participles, the Present ending always in *ing*, and the Preterite ending regularly in *ed*, but very frequently in *en*, and *t*.

4. There are a great many Irregular English Verbs. But it is to be noted,
 1. that that Irregularity relates only to the Termination of the Preterite Tense, and the Passive Participle.
 2. That it reaches only such Words as are native, and originally English.
 3. That it is to be found only in Words of one Syllable, or deriv'd from Words of one Syllable.
 4. That where the Preterite is regular, the Passive Participle is the same with it. Except *Hew*, *Mow*, *Show*, *Snow*, *Sow*; which have *Hewn*, *Mown*, *Shown*, *Snown*, *Sown*.

5. These Irregularities may be reduced to the following Heads.

(1.) The *s* is changed into *t* after *c*, *ch*, *sh*, *f*, *k*, *p*, *x*; and after *s* and *b*, when pronounced hard; and sometimes after *t*, *m*, *n*, *r*, when a short Vowel goes before *s*; as, *Plac't*, *Snate'b't*, *Fish'b't*, *Wak't*, *Dwelt*, *Smelt*. But when a long Vowel goes before *p*, it is either shortened, or changed into a short one; as, *Kept*, *Slept*, *Wept*, *Crept*, *Swept*, *Leapt*, from *keep*, *sleep*, *wreep*, *creep*, *sweep*, *leap*; as also sometimes before *t*, *m*, *n*, *r*, and *v* turned into *f*, as, *Feed*, *felt*; *Dream*, *dreamt*; *Mean*, *meant*; *Leave*, *left*.

(2.) When the Present ends in *d*, or *t*, the Preterite is sometimes the same with it; as, *Read*, *Cast*, *Hurt*, *Burst*, *Hit*, *Quit*; and when two Vowels proceed, the last is left out; as, *Spread*, *spred*; *Lead*, *led*; *Feed*, *fed*; *Bleed*, *bled*; *Meet*, *met*. When a Consonant comes before *d*, it is sometimes changed into *t*; as, *Bend*, *bent*; *Lend*, *lent*; *Send*, *sent*; *Rend*, *rent*; *Gird*, *girt*.

(3.) Most of the other Irregular Verbs may be comprehended under the following Lists.

I. Such as have their Preterite and Participle Passive the same.

<i>Awake</i> ,	<i>awoke</i> .	<i>Find</i> ,	<i>found</i> .	<i>Pay</i> ,	<i>paid</i> .	<i>Sung</i> ,	<i>prung</i> .
<i>Abide</i> ,	<i>abode</i> .	<i>Flee</i> ,	<i>fled</i> .	<i>Say</i> ,	<i>said</i> .	<i>Swing</i> ,	<i>swung</i> .
<i>Beseech</i> ,	<i>besought</i> .	<i>Fling</i> ,	<i>flung</i> .	<i>Seek</i> ,	<i>sought</i> .	<i>Swim</i> ,	<i>swum</i> .
<i>Bind</i> ,	<i>bounid</i> .	<i>Grind</i> ,	<i>ground</i> .	<i>Sell</i> ,	<i>sold</i> .	<i>Teach</i> ,	<i>taught</i> .
<i>Bring</i> ,	<i>brought</i> .	<i>Gild</i> ,	<i>gilt</i> .	<i>Sit</i> ,	<i>sat</i> .	<i>Tell</i> ,	<i>told</i> .
<i>Buy</i> ,	<i>bought</i> .	<i>Hang</i> ,	<i>hung</i> .	<i>Shine</i> ,	<i>shone</i> .	<i>Think</i> ,	<i>thought</i> .
<i>Catch</i> ,	<i>caught</i> .	<i>Hear</i> ,	<i>heard</i> .	<i>Spin</i> ,	<i>spun</i> .	<i>Work</i> ,	<i>wrought</i> .
<i>Dig</i> ,	<i>dug</i> .	<i>Lay</i> ,	<i>laid</i> .	<i>Spring</i> ,	<i>prung</i> .	<i>Win</i> ,	<i>won</i> .
<i>Drink</i> ,	<i>drunk</i> .	<i>Loft</i> ,	<i>lost</i> .	<i>Stand</i> ,	<i>stood</i> .	<i>Wind</i> ,	<i>wound</i> .
<i>Fight</i> ,	<i>fought</i> .	<i>Make</i> ,	<i>made</i> .	<i>Stuck</i> ,	<i>stuck</i> .	<i>Wring</i> ,	<i>wrong</i> .

Part II. Chap. III. of Verbs.

49

II. Such as have the Preterite and Participle different; as,

bore, born.	Freeze, froze, frozen.	Shrank, shrank, shrank.
began, begun.	Get, got, gotten.	Sink, sank, sunk.
bad; bidden.	Give, gave, given.	Slay, slew, slain.
beat, beaten.	Go, went, gone.	Slide, slid.
bit, bitten.	Grow, grew, grown.	Smite, smote.
blew, blown.	Hew, hewed, hewn.	Strike, struck.
chid, chidden.	Hide, hid, hidden.	Speak, spoke.
chose, chosen.	Hold, held, holden.	Spir, spat.
clove, cleft.	Know, knew, known.	Strive, strove.
came, come.	Ly, lay, lay'n.	Swear, swore.
crew, crow'd.	Ride, rode, ridden.	Swell, swel'd.
durst, dared.	Ring, rang, rung.	Take, took.
did, done.	Rise, rose, risen.	Tear, tore.
drew, drawn.	Run, ran, run.	Thrive, thrrove.
drove, driven.	See, saw, seen.	Throw, threwe.
eat, eaten.	Seeth, sod, sodden.	Tread, trod.
fell, fallen.	Shake, shooke, shaken.	Wear, wore.
flew, flown.	Shear, shore, shorn.	Weave, wove.
forsook, forsaken.	Shoot, shot, shotten.	Write, wrote.

These Preterites Bare, Share, Sware, Tare, Ware, Clave, Gat, Begat, For-brake, Spake, Slang, Sprang, Swang, Wan, Stank, Sank, are seldom used. But Beseech'a, Catch'a, Work'a, Digg'd, Gild'd, Gird'd, Hang'd, Writ, for Besought, Caught, &c. are frequently to be met with.

NOTE, 1. That when the Verb-ends in one Consonant, that Consonant is for most Part doubled before ed, est, edst and eth; as, Worship, worshipped, worshippes, worshippesft, worshippeth, &c. as also before ens; as, Bid, bidden.

NOTE, 2. That the A POST ROP H U S (which was become too common in English Verbs; as, Lov'd, lov'st, for loved, lovest,) begins now to be disused by most polite Writers in Prose; But Poets still use it, tho' not so much as formerly.

NOTE, 3. That the Preterite Active, and the Participle Passive (when one word serves for both) are thus distinguished; When it hath nothing before it the Nominative alone, or have or had with it, it is the Preterite Active, but if it hath any part of the helping Verb AM, it is the Participle Passive.

EXCEPT Come, Gone, Run, Set, Risen, Fallen, Grown, Withered, and like Intransitive Verbs, which have frequently the Passive Signs AM, T, &c. instead of HAVE, in the Perfect Tense; and WAS, WAST, instead of HAD, in the Plusquamperfect; as, Vem, I am come; Veneram, is come.

NOTE, 4. That tho' the Latin Perfect frequently answers both to HAVE DID (or the Preterite Termination ED, &c.) yet they seem to be thus distinguished. DID or ED, &c. respects a certain past Time, in which the thing was finished, or a finishing; as, I wrote, or did write yesterday: HAVE ever speaks of a thing as but just now past, or at least does not refer to any particular Time that it happened at; as, I have written my Letter, i. e. just now; I have read of Julius Cesar, i. e. some time or other. The first of these is called the Preterperfect Definite, and the other the Preterperfect Indefinite.

NOTE, 5. That SHALL and WILL, by Mr. Brightland are thus distinguished;

Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

In the First Person simply SHALL foretels;
 In WILL a Threat or else a Promise dwells.
 SHALL in the Second and the Third does threat;
 WILL simply then foretels the future Feat.

By Mr. Turner thus,

WILL imports the Will or Purpose of the Person it is joined with;
 SHALL implies the Will of another, who promises or threatens to do
 Thing, or cause it to be done, permits it, commands it, or the like.

De Formatione Verborum, Of the Formation of Verbs

Quartuor sunt Terminations Verbi, a quibus reliquæ omnes formantur; scilicet o Præsentis, i Præteriti, um Supini, & re Infinitivi, hoc modo;

1. Ab o formantur am & em.
2. Ab i formantur ram, rim, ro, stem & se.
3. Ab um formantur u, us & rus.
4. A re formantur reliquæ omnes, nempe bam, bo, rem, a, e, i, ns, dus, dum, di, do.

Here are Four Terminations of a Verb, from which all the rest are formed; namely, o of the Present, i of the Preterite, um of Supine, and re of the Infinitive, after this Manner:

1. From o are formed am and em.
2. From i, ram, rim, ro, se &c.
3. U, us & rus are form'd from re.
4. All other parts from re do come As bam, bo, rem, a, e and ns and dus, dum, do and di.

In every complete Verb there are commonly four PRINCIPAL PARTS. The Present of the Indicative in O, the Preterite or Perfect in I, First Supine in UM, and the Present of the Infinitive in RE. The (which is therefore called the THEME or Root of the Verb) gives Origin to the whole Verb either immediately or immediately. The Preterite, First Supine, and the Present of the Infinitive come from it immediately, and the rest from them; except the Future of the Indicative in am, and the Present of the Subjunctive in em, which by this Scheme are also formed immediately from the Present in O.

It is to be Noted that the Preterites and Supines of the First Conjugation commonly in avi and atum, of the Second in ui and itum, and of the Fourth in ivi and itum. But the Third Conjugation cannot be reduced to any general Rule, and there are a great many Exceptions in the other three which are therefore to be learned by daily Practice, till the Scholar is accustomed to that Part of Grammar that treats particularly of them.

But the Present of the Infinitive, and all the other Parts of the Verb are regularly formed after one fixt and uniform Manner.

In the foregoing Rules of Formation I have for the Ease of the Memory put the Terminations instead of the Moods and Tenses; But the greater Plainness they may be thus expressed:

Part II. Chap. III. of Verb. . . . 51

I. From the Present of the Indicative are formed the Future of the Indicative of the Third and Fourth Conjugations, and the Present of the Subjunctive of the First.

II. From the Perfect of the Indicative are formed the Plusquamperfect of it, the Perfect, Plusquamperfect and Future of the Subjunctive, and the Perfect of the Infinitive.

III. From the First Supine is formed the Last Supine, the Participle Past, and Future Active.

IV. From the Present of the Infinitive are formed the Imperfect of the Indicative, the Future of the same when it ends in BO, the Imperfect of the Subjunctive, the Imperative, the Participles Present and Future Passive, and the Gerunds.

NOTE, 1. That Verbs in IO of the Third Conjugation retain i before , unto, etiam, ens, endus, endum, but lose it in the other Parts formed from the Present of the Infinitive.

NOTE, 2. That the last Person Plur. of the Imperative may be formed adding o to the same Person of the Present of the Indicative; as, Amant, amo; Docent; docento.

NOTE, 3. That the Passive Voice is formed from the same Tense, of the five (except where Sum is used) by adding r to o, or changing m into r.

NOTE, 4. That the Present of the Infinitive Passive of the Third Conjugation may be formed by taking s from the Second Person of the Present of the Indicative Active; as, legis, legi; or, when the Verb is weak, by changing or, or ior, into i; as, Proficior, profici; morior, mori.

NOTE, 5. That the Present of the Infinitive Active, and the Second Person of the Indicative and Imperative Passive in re are the same.

NOTE, 6. That the Second Person Plural of the Present of the Indicative, and of the Imperative, are the same in the Passive Voice.

NOTE, 7. That where any of the Principal Parts are wanting, these are commonly wanting that come from them: For which reason antiquarians give Supines to a great many Verbs, which yet are not to be found in any Author, because the Participles formed from them are dead: And they suppose likewise all Dependent Verbs of old to have had the Active Voice, and consequently Supines, tho now lost.

NOTE, 8. That all Verbs of the Second Conjugation end in eo, and all of the Fourth end in io, except eo and que. There are 8 Verbs in the First Conjugation, viz.deo, creo, screvo, meo, caldeo, laqueo, nanucleo. There are 22 in io of the First, viz. glacio, macio, crucio, o, suntio, fascio, radio; bio, retalio, spolio, amphi, lamio, somnio, pia, vario, decurio, decenturio, suscepturio, furio, basio and vitio; and 12 in the Third, viz. capio, facio, jacio, lacio, specio, fadio, fugio, cupio, rapio, pario, quxtio; with their Compounds.

It is not, in my Opinion, necessary to trouble the Learner with a particular Account how the respective Changes in the Moods, Tenses, Numbers and Persons are made; they being obvious from the Examples above, which I have distinguished them from the Body or Essential part of Verb by a Division or Hyphen. And perhaps this alone, without any other particular Rule, might be a sufficient Direction. For to conceive one Verb by the Example of another, we have no more to do, instead of the Essential Part of the one (which is all that stands before e, eo or io, of the Pres. of the Indic.) to substitute the Essential Part of the other; and then to add to it the additional Syllables it requires.

in Conjugation as before. Only we are to advert 1. That in the *Terites* and *Supines*, and the *Parts* that come from them, we are to read all before *i* and *us* for the Body of the Verb, adding the usual Syllable to it, as in the *Active Voice* of *Lego*. 2dly, In Verbs in *io* we are to retain or omit the *i*, as in Note I.

There is yet another Way of the Formation of Verbs, differing from the First Method in this, that what Parts according to it are derived from the Infinitive, are by this formed from the First or Second Person of the Present of the Indicative. But tho' this may be the more natural Way, yet the other is more easy and uniform.

De verbis Irregularibus,

IRREGULARIA Verba
vulgo recensentur octo,
viz. *Sum*, *Eo*, *Queo*, *Volo*,
Nolo, *Malo*, *Fero* & *Fio*, cum
Compositis.

Of Irregular Verbs

THE IRREGULAR Verbs are commonly numbered Eight, viz. *Sum*, *Queo*, *Volo*, *Nolo*, *Malo*, *Fero* and *Fio*, with their Compounds.

S U M.

Sum, *fui*, *esse*, *To Be.*
INDICATIVUS. **SUBJUNCTIVUS.**

Præsens.

<i>Sum</i> ,	<i>I am</i> ,	<i>Sim</i> ,
<i>Es</i> ,	<i>Thou art</i> ,	<i>Sis</i> ,
<i>Est</i> ,	<i>He is :</i>	<i>Sit</i> ,
<i>Sumus</i> ,	<i>We are</i> ,	<i>Simus</i> ,
<i>Eritis</i> ,	<i>Ye are</i> ,	<i>Sitis</i> ,
<i>Sunt</i> ,	<i>They are.</i>	<i>Sint</i> ,

Imperfectum.

<i>Eram</i> ,	<i>I was</i> ,	<i>Esem</i> ,
<i>Eras</i> ,	<i>Thou wast</i> ,	<i>Esseſ</i> ,
<i>Erat</i> ,	<i>He was :</i>	<i>Eſſet</i> ,
<i>Eramus</i> ,	<i>We were</i> ,	<i>Eſſemus</i> ,
<i>Eratis</i> ,	<i>Ye were</i> ,	<i>Eſſetis</i> ,
<i>Erant</i> ,	<i>They were.</i>	<i>Eſſent</i> .

Perfectum.

<i>Fui</i> ,	<i>I have been</i> ,	<i>Fuerim</i> ,
<i>Fuisti</i> ,	<i>Thou hast been</i> ,	<i>Fueris</i> ,
<i>Fuit</i> ,	<i>He hath been :</i>	<i>Fuerit</i> ,
<i>Fuimus</i> ,	<i>We have been</i> ,	<i>Fuerimus</i> ,
<i>Fuistis</i> ,	<i>Ye have been</i> ,	<i>Fueritis</i> ,
<i>Fuerunt</i> ,	<i>They have been.</i>	<i>Fuerint</i> ,

I may or can be,
Thou mayſt or canſt
He may or can be :
We may or can be,
Te may or can be,
They may or can be.

I might &c. be,
Thou mightest be,
He might be :
We might be,
Te might be,
They might be.

I may have been,
Thou mayſt have been
He may have been :
We may have been,
Te may have been,
They may have been.

Plusquamperfectum.

eram,	I had been,	Fuisse,	I might have
eras,	Thou badst been,	Fuisseſ,	Thou mightest have
erat,	He had been:	Fuisseſt,	He might have
eramus,	We had been,	Fuisseſſus,	We might have
eratis,	Ye had been,	Fuisseſſetis,	Ye might have
erant,	They had been,	Fuisseſſent,	They might have

Futurum.

I shall or will be,	Fuero,	I shall have been,	
Thou shalt or will be,	Fueris,	Thou shalt have been,	
He shall or will be:	Fuerit,	He shall have been:	
We shall or will be,	Fuerimus,	We shall have been,	
Ye shall or will be,	Fueritis,	Ye shall have been,	
They shall or will be.	Fuerint,	They shall have been.	

IMPERATIVUS.

INFINITIVUS.

Es,	Be thou,	Præf. Eſſe,	To be.
Eſto,		Perf. Fuiſſe,	To have been.
Eſto,	Let him be:	Fut. Futurum,	To have or had
Eſte,	Be ye,	eſſe vel futurum,	[been.]
Eſtote,			
Sunto,	Let them be.	Fut. Futurus,	About to be.

The Compounds of SUM are Adsum, abſum, deſum, interſum, preſum, ſum, ſubſum, ſuperſum, inſum, proſum & poſſum. The first eight are conjugated as the Simple SUM: Inſum wants the Preterite and its descendants, for we do not use inſui, inſuſti, inſueram, &c.

¶ PROSUM, to do good, has a d where SUM begins with e; as,

Pref. Proſum, prod-eſ, prod-eſt: pro-ſumus, prod-eſtis, pro-ſunt.
NDIC. Imp. Prod-eram, prod-eras, prod-erat: prod-eramus, &c.

UBJ. Imp. Prod-eſſem, prod-eſſes, prod-eſſet: prod-eſſemus, &c.

MPERAT. Prod-eſto, prod-eſte.

INFINIT. Prod-eſſe.

POSSUM should be pot-fauſ (as being compounded of potis, able, and ſum) but for the better Sound t is changed into ſ before another ſ, and retained before any other Letter: And for the lame reaſon ſ is always taken away. Poſſem and poſſe are contracted for Poſſem, poſſe, which are to be found in ſome old Authors; thus;

¶ Poſſum, potui, poſſe, To be able.

INDICATIVUS.

Præf. Poſſum, potes, poſteſt: poſſumus, poſteſtis, poſſunt.
Imp. Poſteram, poteras, poterat: poſteramus, poteratis, poterant.
er. Poſui, potuiti, potuit: poſuimus, potuifſis, potuerunt v. poſuereſ.
luf. Poſueram, poſueras, poſuerat: poſueramus, poſueratis, poſuerant.
ut. Poſtero, poteris, poterit: poſterimus, poteritis, poterant.

S U B F U N C T I V U S.

<i>Præf.</i>	Possim, possis, possit :	possimus, possitis, possim,
<i>Imp.</i>	Possim, posses, possit :	possimus, possitis, possim,
<i>Per.</i>	Potuerim, potueris, potuerit :	potuerimus, potueritis, potuerim,
<i>Plus.</i>	Potuissim, potuisses, potuisset :	potuissimus, potuissetis, potuissim,
<i>Fut.</i>	Potuero, potueris, potuerit :	potuerimus, potueritis, potuerim,

I N F I N I T I V U S.

Præf. Posse,*Per.* Potuisse.

The rest may

E O.

Eo, ivi, itum, ire, To go.

I N D I C A T I V U S.

<i>Præf.</i>	Eo, is, it ; imus, its, eunt.
<i>Imp.</i>	Ibam, ibas, ibat ; ibamus, ibatis, ibant.
<i>Perf.</i>	Ivi, ivisti, ivit ; ivimus, ivistis, [^{iverunt} v. iver.
<i>Plus.</i>	Iveram, iveras, iverat ; iveramus, iveratis, iverant.
<i>Fut.</i>	Ibo, ibis, ibit ; ibimus, ibitis, ibunt.

S U B F U N C T I V U S.

<i>Præf.</i>	Eam, eas, eat ; eamus, eatis, eant.
<i>Imp.</i>	Irem, ires, iret ; iremus, iretis, irent.
<i>Perf.</i>	Iverim, iveris, iverit ; iverimus, iveritis, iverint.
<i>Plus.</i>	Ivissem, ivisses, ivisset ; ivissemus, ivissetis, ivisset.
<i>Fut.</i>	Ivero, iveris, iverit ; iverimus, iveritis, iverint.

I M P E R A T I V U S.

I N F I N I T I V U S.

<i>Præf.</i>	$\{$ I, ito ; $\{$ ite, eunto.
--------------	--------------------------------

<i>Præf.</i> Ire.
<i>Perf.</i> Ivisse.

<i>Fut.</i> Iturum [^{effe,} fruille]
--

P A R T I C I P I A. S U P I N A.

<i>Præf.</i> Iens, Gen. euntis.	1. Itum.
<i>Fut.</i> Iturus, -a, -um,	2. Itu.

G E R U N D I A.

Eundum.
Eundi.
Eundo.

NOTE, 1. That in general EO is a Verb of the Fourth Conjugation.

NOTE, 2. That of old Verbs of the Fourth had their Imperfect in iba and Future in ibo, of which there are many Examples in *Plautus* and *Terence*, and some in *Virgil* and *Horace*.

After the same manner the Compounds of EO are conjugated, *ad eo, ab eo, ex eo, ob eo, redeo, sub eo, pereo, coeo, in eo, prae eo, ante eo, præter eo, trans eo; ad itam, ad ibo, ad iens, adeuntis, adeundum;* But *ambio* is a regular Verb of the Fourth Conjugation.

Part II. Chap. III. of Verb. 55

NOTE, That in the Compounds, *ivi*, *iuisti*, &c. are seldom used, but are contracted into *ū*, *iusti*, as *adū*, *adiusti*, and sometimes *adisti*: *adieram*, *adieris*, &c.

UEO, *I can*, and **NEQUEO**, *I cannot*, are conjugated the same way as **EO**; only they want the *Imperative* and the *Gerunds*; and *Participles* are scarcely in use.

V O L O.

Volo, *volui*, *velle*, *To will, or be willing.*

INDICATIVUS.

- es. **Volo**, *vis*, *vult*; *volumus*, *vultis*, *volunt*.
p. **Vol-ebam**, *-ebas*, *-ebat*; *-ebamus*, *-ebatis*, *-ebant*.
rf. **Vol-ui**, *-uisti*, *-uit*; *-uimus*, *-uiftis*, *-uerunt*, *-uerent*.
us. **Vol-ueram**, *-ueras*, *-uerat*; *-ueramus*, *-ueratis*, *-uerant*.
t. **Volam**, *voles*, *volet*; *volemus*, *voletis*, *volet*.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

- es. **Velim**, *velis*, *velit*; *velimus*, *velitis*, *velint*.
p. **Vellem**, *velles*, *vellet*; *vellemus*, *velletis*, *vellement*.
rf. **Vol-uerim**, *-ueris*, *-uerit*; *-uerimus*, *-ueritis*, *-uerint*.
us. **Vol-uiftem**, *-uiffles*, *-uiffset*; *-uifftemus*, *-uiffsetis*, *-uiffsent*.
t. **Vol-vero**, *-ueris*, *-uerit*; *-uerimus*, *-ueritis*, *-uerint*.

INFINITIVUS.

PARTICIPIUM.

- es. **Velle**. Perf. **Voluisse**. Præf. **Volens**.

The rest are wanting.

N O L O.

Nolo, *nolui*, *nolle*, *To be unwilling.*

INDICATIVUS.

- es. **Nolo**, *non-vis*, *non-vult*; *nolumus*, *non-vultis*, *nolunt*.
p. **Nol-ebam**, *-ebas*, *-ebat*; *-ebamus*, *-ebatis*, *-ebant*.
rf. **Nol-ui**, *-uisti*, *-uit*; *-uimus*, *-uiftis*, *-uerunt*, *-vere*.
us. **Nol-ueram**, *-ueras*, *-uerat*; *-ueramus*, *-ueratis*, *-uerant*.
t. **Nolam**, *noles*, *nolet*; *nolemus*, *noletis*, *nolent*.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

- es. **Nolim**, *nolis*, *nolit*; *nolimus*, *nolitis*, *nolint*.
p. **Nollem**, *nolles*, *nollet*; *nollemus*, *nolleatis*, *nollett*.

Perf. Nol-uerim, -ueris, uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -ueri
Plur. Nol-uissim, -uisses, -uisset; -uissimus, -uissetis, -uisse
Fut. Nol-uero, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -ueri

IMPERATIVUS.**INFINITIVUS.****PARTICIPIUM.**

Pras. { Noli, { nolite, | **Pr.** Nolle. | **Pras.** Nolemus
{ Nolito; { nolitote. | **Per.** Noluisse. | **The rest** *masculine*

M A L O.

Malo, malui, malle, *To be more willing.*

INDICATIVUS.

Pr. Malo, mavis, mavult; malumus, mavultis, malum
Im. Mal-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant
Per. Mal-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt,
Pl. Mal-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerat
Fut. Mal-am, -es, -et; &c. *This is scarcely in Use.*

S U B J U N C T I V U S.

Pr. Malim, malis, malit; malimus, malitis, malim
Im. Mallem, malles, mallet; mallemus, malletis, mallem
Pe. Mal-uerim, -ueris -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -ueri
Pl. Mal-uissim, -uisses, -uisset; -uissimus, -uissetis, -uisse
Fut. Mal-uero, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -ueri

INFINITIVUS.

Pras. Malle.

Perf. maluisse.

Note. That *Volo*, *Nolo*, & *Malo*, retain something of the Third Conjugation; for *Vis*, *vult*, *vultis*, are contracted of *Volis*, *volit*, *volitis*; and *e* is changed into *u*, for of old they said *Volt*, *voltis*.

Nolo is compounded of *non-volo*, and *Malo* of *magis volo*.

F E R O.**VOX ACTIVA.**

Fero, tuli, latum, ferre, *To bring, or suffer.*

INDICATIVUS.

Pras. Fero, fers, fert; ferimus, fertis, ferunt
Imp. Ferebam, ferebas, ferebat; ferebamus, ferebatis, ferebant
Per. Tuli, tulisti, tulit; tulimus, tulistis, ^{tuleramus}
Plur. Tuleram, tuleras, tulerat; tuleramus, tuleratis, tulerant
Fut. Feram, feres, feret; feremus, feretis, ferent

S U

S U B J U N C T I V U S.

Pras. Feram, feras, ferat; feramus, feratis, ferant.
Pras. Ferrem, ferres, ferret; ferremus, ferretis, ferrent.
Pras. Tul-erim, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.
Pras. Tul-issem, -issem, -isset; -issemus, -issetis, -iscent.
Pras. Tul-ero, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.

I M P E R A T I V U S.

Pras. { Fer, fert; ferte, fertote,	Pr. Ferre.
Ferto, ferto; fertote, fertunto.	Per. Tulisse.

I N F I N I T I V U S.

Pr. Ferre.
Per. Tulisse.
Fut. Laturum esse, vel fuisse.

P A R T I C I P I A.

Pras. Ferens.
Fut. Laturus, -a, -um.

S U P I N A.

1. Latum.
1. Latu.

G E R U N D I A.

Ferendum,
Ferendi,
Ferendo.

V O X P A S S I V A.

Feror, latus, ferri.

I N D I C A T I V U S.

Pras. Feror, [ferris, ferre, fertur; ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.
Imp. Fer-ebat, [-ebam, -ebat, -ebatur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur,
Perf. Latus sum vel fui, latus es vel fuisti, &c.
Plus. Latus eram vel fueram, latus eras vel fueras, &c.
Fut. Fer-ar, [fereris, ferere, feretur; feremur, feremini, ferentur.

S U B J U N C T I V U S.

Pras. Ferar, [feraris, ferare, feratur; feramur, feramini, ferantur.
Imp. Fer-ret, [-retis, -rete, -retur; -remur, -remini, -rentur.
Per. Latus sum vel fuerim, latus sis vel fueris, &c.
Plus. Latus essem vel fuisssem, latus essem vel fuisset, &c.
Fut. Latus fuero, latus fueris, &c.

I M P E R A T I V U S.

Pras. { Ferre, fertor; ferimini, ferunctor.
Fertor,

I N F I N I T I V U S.

Pras. Ferri.
Perf. Latum [effe, fuisse.
Fut. Latum iri.

P A R T I C I P I A.

Perf. Latus.
Fut. Ferendus.

Note;

NOTE. That *Fero* is a Verb of the Third Conjugation, *Fers*, *feri*, *fero*, *feris*, *ferrem*, *ferre*, *ferris*, *feritur*, *fertor*, being contrasted of *feri*, *feritis*, *feriti*, *ferite*, *fererem*, *ferere*, *fereris*, *feritum* and *feritor*.

Also *Fer* of *ferre*: Which in like manner has happened to the *Imperatives* of *Dico*, *duco*, *facio*, they having *dic*, *duc*, *jac*, instead of *de-duce*, *face*.

The Compounds of *Fero* are conjugated the same way as the Simple, *Affero*, *attuli*, *allatum*; *Ausero*, *abstuli*, *ablatum*; *Differo*, *diluli*, *latum*; *Consero*, *contali*, *collatum*; *Infero*, *intuli*, *illatum*; *Offero*, *oblatum*; *Effero*, *extuli*, *elatum*: So *circumfero*, *perfero*, *transfero*, *de-profero*, *antesero*, *presero*,

F I O.

Fio, factus, fieri, To be made, or to become,

INDICATIVUS.

<i>Præs.</i>	Fio , <i>fis</i> , <i>fit</i> ; <i>sumus</i> , <i>fitis</i> , <i>funt</i> .
<i>Imp.</i>	Fiebam , <i>fiebas</i> , <i>fiebat</i> ; <i>fiebamus</i> , <i>fiebatis</i> , <i>fiebant</i> .
<i>Perf.</i>	Factus sum <i>vel fui</i> , factus es <i>vel fuisti</i> , &c.
<i>Plus.</i>	Factus eram <i>vel fueram</i> , factus eras <i>vel fueras</i> , &c.
<i>Fut.</i>	Fiam , <i>fies</i> , <i>fiet</i> ; <i>siemus</i> , <i>fietis</i> , <i>fient</i> .

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

<i>Præs.</i>	Fiam , <i>fias</i> , <i>fiat</i> ; <i>siamus</i> , <i>fiatis</i> , <i>fiant</i> .
<i>Imp.</i>	Fierem , <i>fieres</i> , <i>fieret</i> ; <i>fieremus</i> , <i>fieretis</i> , <i>fierent</i> .
<i>Perf.</i>	Factus sim vel fuerim , factus sis vel fueris , &c.
<i>Plus.</i>	Factus essem vel fuissim , factus esses vel fuisses , &c.
<i>Fut.</i>	Factus fuero , factus fuoris , &c.

IMPERATIVUS.

<i>Præs.</i>	Fi , + <i>fito</i> ; fite , <i>fito</i> ;
	{ <i>fite</i> , <i>fito</i> ;

INFINITIVUS.

<i>Pr.</i>	Fieri .
<i>Pe.</i>	Factum [<i>esse</i> <i>fuisse</i>]
<i>Fut.</i>	Factum iri .

PARTICIPIA.

<i>Perf.</i>	Factus , -a, -um.
<i>Fut.</i>	Faciendus , -a, -um.

SUPINUM.

	Factu .
--	----------------

† Tho *Fi* is rejected by some Grammarians of great Note, yet we have given it Place here, not only because it is to be found in *Plautus*, but also in *Hecate*, Lib. 2. Sat. 5. ver. 38. *Fit cognitor ipse*, according to the best Manuscripts and Editions.

Part II. Chap. III. of Verbs.

59

NOTE, 1. That *Fio* is the Passive of *Facio*, To make, (which is irregular) instead of *Factor*, which is not in use: Yet the Compounds of *Facio*, which change *a* into *i* are regular; as, *affactor*, *affectus*, *affici*; *perfector*, *perfectus*, *perfici*.

NOTE, 2. That the Compounds of *Facio*, with Verbs, Nouns or Adverbs, retain the *a*, and have their Imperative *Aet. fac*, and their passive Form *fa* or *fio*, as *Calefacio*, *lucrificatio*, *benefacio*; *calefac*, *calefia*, &c. But these compounded with a Preposition change the *a* into *i*, and have *fici* and *factor*. There are some compounded of *facio* and a Noun, where *facio* is changed into *fico* of the first Conjugation; as, *magnifico*, *significo*.

To the Irregular Verbs may be reduced EDO, to cut, which in some of its Parts falls in with the Verb *SUS*, thus;

IND. <i>Præf.</i>	<i>Edo</i> ,	<i>es</i> ,	<i>est</i> ;	<i>estis</i> ,	<i>estis</i> ,	<i>estis</i> ,
UB. <i>Imp.</i>	<i>Efferem</i> ,	<i>effes</i> ,	<i>effet</i> ;	<i>effemus</i> ,	<i>effitis</i> ,	<i>effent</i> .
MPERAT.	<i>Es</i> vel <i>estis</i> ,			<i>este</i> vel <i>estote</i> .	<i>INFIN.</i>	<i>Eff</i> .

Likewise its Compounds *Comedo*, *comes*, *comest*, &c. and *Exedo*, *exes*, *est*, &c. But all these may likewise be regularly conjugated, *Edo*, *dis*, *edit*, &c. *Ederem*, *ederes*, *ederet*, &c.

Of Defective Verbs.

Those of the Irregular Verbs already mentioned want some of their Parts, and upon that account may be called also *Defective Verbs*, yet DEFECTIVE Verbs here we chiefly understand such as want considerable Branches, or are used only in few Tenses and Persons. We shall set down these that most frequently occur. I AIO, I say; IN QUAM, I say; FOREM, I should be; AUSIM, I dare; FAXIM, I'll see to it, or I will do it; AVE, and SALVE, God save you, Hail, Good morrow; CEDO, tell or give me; QUÆSO, I pray.

IND.	{ <i>Præf.</i> Aio,	<i>ais</i> ,	<i>ait</i> ;				<i>aiunt</i> .
	<i>Imp.</i> <i>Ai-ebam</i> ,	<i>ebas</i> ,	<i>-ebat</i> ;	<i>-ebamus</i> ,	<i>-ebatis</i> ,		<i>-ebant</i> .
	<i>Perf.</i> -		<i>aiisti</i> ,				
SUB.	[<i>Præf.</i> -	<i>aias</i> ,	<i>aiat</i> ;		<i>aiatis</i> ,	<i>aiant</i> .	
MPERAT.	<i>ai</i> ,	[PARTICIPLE <i>præf. aiens</i> .]					
	{ <i>Præf.</i> Inquam,	<i>inquis</i> ,	<i>inquit</i> ;	<i>inquimus</i> ,	<i>inquitis</i> ,	<i>inquiuit</i> .	
	<i>Imp.</i> -		<i>inquebat</i> ;				<i>inquebant</i> .
	{ <i>Perf.</i> -		<i>inquisti</i> ;				
	<i>Fut.</i> -		<i>inquieris</i> ,	<i>inquiet</i> ;			
MPERAT.	<i>inque</i> ,	<i>-ito</i> .	[PARTICIPLE <i>Præf. inquiens</i> .]				

SUB.	[<i>Imp.</i>] <i>Forem</i> ,	<i>foret</i> ,	<i>foret</i> ;	<i>foremus</i> ,	<i>foretis</i> ,	<i>forent</i> .
------	--------------------------------	----------------	----------------	------------------	------------------	-----------------

INFIN. *Fore*, to be, the same with *futurum esse*.

SUB.	{ <i>Præf.</i> <i>Ausim</i> ,	<i>ausis</i> ,	<i>ausit</i> ;				<i>faxint</i> .
------	-------------------------------	----------------	----------------	--	--	--	-----------------

	<i>Perf.</i> <i>Faxim</i> ,	<i>faxis</i> ,	<i>faxit</i> ;				<i>faxint</i> .
--	-----------------------------	----------------	----------------	--	--	--	-----------------

	<i>Fut.</i> <i>Faxo</i> ,	<i>faxis</i> ,	<i>faxit</i> ;				<i>faxint</i> .
--	---------------------------	----------------	----------------	--	--	--	-----------------

NOTE, That *faxim* and *faxo* are used instead of *secerim*, and *secero*.

MPERAT.	{ <i>Aveto</i> ,		<i>avete</i> .				
	<i>Salve</i> ,		{ <i>avetore</i> .				
	<i>Salveto</i> ,		<i>salvete</i> .				
	<i>Cedo</i> ,		{ <i>salvatore</i> .				
INDIC. <i>Præf.</i>	<i>Quase</i> ,		<i>cedite</i> .				
			{ <i>quæsumus</i> .				

INFIN. [*avere*.

salvese.

Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

II. These three Verbs ODI, MEMINI, COEPI, have only the PRETERITIVE Tense and what is formed from it, and therefore are by some called PRETERITIVE Verbs; thus,

Odi, oderam, oderim, odissem, odero, odisse.
Memini, meminoram, meminorim, meminissom, meminero, meminisse.

Capi, caperam, caperim, capissem, capero, capisse.

But under these they comprehend also the Signification of the other Tenses; as, Memini, I remember, or I have remembered; Meminera, remembered, or I had remembered, &c. So Odi, I hate, or I have hated; Capi, I begin, or I have begun. Tho' I am not fully satisfied as to the last, for I do not know any Example where Capi doth clearly signify the Present Tense.

Memini hath also the Imperative Memento, Remember thou, Memote, Remember ye. Some add Meminens, Rememb'reng, which is scarcely to be imitated.

To these some add NOVI, because it frequently hath the Signification of the Present, I know, as well as I have known; tho' it comes from Noso, which is complete.

NOTE, 1. That Odientes is to be found in Petronius; Odiatur in Scaevola; Capio in Plautus and Terence. See Voss. Analog. lib. III. Cap. 3.

NOTE, 2. That the Particles Capitus and Osus, with its Compound Perosus, Eosus, are in use among the best Authors, but Perodi and Eodi are not.

III. Fari, To speak, wants the first Person of the Present Indic. and perhaps the whole Present of the Subjunctive, for we do not say Fer, Fer, and rarely Feris, feretur, &c. So likewise Daris and Deris, but Dor, or Der, To be given. The Compounds of the First, as Effor, Affer, are rare, but the Compounds of the other, as Addor, Reddor, are common.

IV. Most of the other Defective Verbs are but single Words, rarely to be found but among Poets; as, Infis, he begins; Desit, it wanting. Some are compounded of a Verb with the Conjunction si, as Sis, for Si vis, If thou wilt; Sultis, for Si vultis, If ye will; Audes, for Si audes, If you dare.

Of Impersonal Verbs.

There are also a Kind of Defective Verbs, which for the most part are used only in the Third Person Sing. They have the Sign IT before them in English; as, Poenitet, it repents; Placet, it pleases; And are thus conjugated;

	Præf.	Imperfect.	Perfect.	Plusquam.	Futur.
IND.	Poenitet,	poenitebat,	poenituit,	poenituerat,	poenitebit.
SUB.	Poenitear,	poenitebet,	poenituerit,	poenituissest,	poenituerent.
INF.	Poenitere,	poenituisse.		

Most Verbs may be used impersonally in the Passive Voice, especially such as otherwise have no Passive; as,

	Præf.	Imper.	Perf.	Plusquam.	Fut.
IND.	Pugastur,	pugnabatur,	pugnatum	[est, -atum]	pugnabit,
SUBJ.	Pugnetur,	pugnaretur,	pugnatum	[fit, -atum]	pugnabit,
INF.	Pugnari	pugnatum	[esse, -uisse, - - -]	pugnatum

NOTE

Part II. Chap. IV. of Participle. 6.

NOTE, 1. That IMPERSONALS are applied to any Person or Number by putting that which stands before other Verbs, after the Impersonals in the Cases which they govern, as *Permitet me, te, illam, I rego, thou repenteſt, he repenteſt, instead of Ego permitem, &c. which is not exactly Latin. Placet mihi, tibi, illi, It pleaſes me, thee, him; or Ille, thou pleaſest, &c. Pugnat̄ur a me, a te, ab illo, I fight, thou fightest, he fighteth, &c.*

NOTE, 2. That Impersonals are not used in the Imperative, but instead of it we take the Subjunctive.

NOTE, 3. That Impersonal Verbs are very often used personally, especially in the Plural Number; as *Accidit, Contingit, Eventit, Pertinet, Dicit, Dolet, Lacet, Nocet, Patet, Placet, Praefat, &c.* For we say, *Tu et hi* *sola places;* *Nulli noceo;* *Multa homini accidunt, contingunt, curant;* *Parvum parva decent,* &c. But 'tis to be remarked that they are generally Impersonal when an Infinitive or Subjunctive Mood follows, for though we say, *Tu places mihi, yet I cannot say, Si places audire, but si placet mihi audire.* Again we cannot say, *Ego contigi esse domi, but Me contigit esse domi, or Mibi contigit esse domi.* Likewise *Eventit illum mori, or ut e moreretur;* but not, *Ille evenit mori.*

[I shall not here inquire what is the Word understood to Impersonal verbs, whether it is a Noun of the like Signification; as, *Pugna pugnatum,* the Word *Res* or *Negotium,* or the Infinitive Mood. — No, I incline to think that any one of these will not answer to them all, but that there are some to which the First, to others the Second, to others the third may be most fitly understood, as the Nature of the Verb, and good sense shall direct us. This we are sure of that the Word understood can never be a Person properly so called, but a Thing; for which reason and the want of the two primary Persons, viz. the First and Second, they are called Impersonal, tho' some are much offended with the Name.]

C A P. IV.

De Participio.

Tria sunt praecipue consideranda in Particilio, Tempus, Significatio & Declinatio.

I. Tempora Participiorum sunt Tria, Praesens, Præteritum & Futurum.

{ Præf. Præt. Fut.	} de Temp. Fut.	{ ns. tus, sus, xus. rus, dus.
-----------------------------	-----------------------	---

II. Significatio Participiorum est vel *Activa*, vel *Passiva*, vel *Neutra*, ad modum verborum a quibus descendunt.

C H A P. IV.

Of Participle.

There are three things especially to be considered in a Participle, Time, Signification and Declension.

I. The Tenses of Participles are Three, the Present, Preterite and Future.

{ Pres. Pretr. Fut.	} de Part. Fut.	{ ns. tus, sus, xus. rus, dus.
------------------------------	-----------------------	---

II. The Signification of Participles is either Active, or Passive, or Neuter, after the Manner of the Verbs from which they come.

Parti-

Participles. { in *ns* & *tus* plerumque sunt *Activa*,
in *tus* semper *Passiva*,
in *tus*, *sus*, *xus*, plerumque sunt *Passiva*, interdum vero *Activa*, vel etiam *Communia*.

III. Omnia Participia sunt *Adjectiva*: quæ desinunt in *ns* sunt *Tertia Declinationis*, reliqua autem omnia *Prima* & *Secunda*.

{ in *ns* and *tus* are generally Active.
in *dus* always Passive.
in *tus*, *sus*, *xus*, are generally Passive, sometimes Active, or also Common.

III. All Participles are Adjectives: those which end in *ns* are of the Third Declension, but all the rest are of the Fifth and Second.

A PARTICIPLE is a Kind of Adjective formed from a Verb, which in its Signification always imports some Time.

It is so called, because it *partakes* of a Noun and a Verb, having Gender and Cases from the one, Time and Signification from the other, and Number from both.

1. ACTIVE Verbs [See Chap. IX] have two Participles, one of the Present Time ending in *ns*; as, *Amans*, Loving; and another of the Future ending in *tus*; as, *Amatus*, About to love.

2. PASSIVE Verbs have likewise two Participles, one of the Present ending in *tus*, *sus* or *xus*; as, *Amatus*, loved; *Vitus*, seen; *Flexus*, bowed, (to which some add one in *sus* viz. *Mortuus*, dead;) and another of the Future ending in *dus*; as, *Amandus*, to be loved.

3. NEUTER Verbs have two Participles as the Active; as, *Sedens*, Seating, *Sessurus*, About to sit.

4. Active INTRANSITIVE Verbs have frequently three Participles; as, *Cavens*, Wanting, *Caritatus*, About to want, *Carendus*, To be wanted; *Dolens*, Grieving, *Dolitatus*, About to grieve, *Dolendus*, To be grieved: And sometimes four; as, *Vigilans*, Watching, *Vigilaturns*, About to watch, *Vigilatus*, Watched, *Vigilandus*, To be watched.

5. DEPONENT and COMMON Verbs have generally four Participles; as, *Locutus*, Speaking, *Locuturus*, About to speak, *Locutus*, Having spoken, *Locundus*, To be spoken; *Dignans*, Vouchsafing, *Dignaturus*, About to vouchsafe, *Dignatus*, Having vouchsafed, or being vouchsafed, *Dignandus*, To be vouchsafed.

NOTE, That in some Deponent Verbs the Participle perfect hath both Active and Passive Signification, tho' that of the Verb it self is only Active; as, *Testatus*, Having testified, or being testified: So *Mentitus*, *meditatus*, *Oblitus*, &c.

NOTE, That it is essential to a Participle, I. That it come immediately from a Verb. II. That in its Signification it also include Time. Therefore *Tunicatus*, Coated, *Larvatus*, Masked, and such like, are no Participles, because they come from Nouns, and not from Verbs: And *Ignarus*, ignorant, *Elegans*, neat, *Circumspectus*, circumspect, *Tacitus*, silent, *Falsus*, false, *Prosus*, prodigal, &c, are not Participles, because they do not signify Time.

Part II. CHAP. V. of Adverb. 63

There are a Kind of Adjective Nouns ending in **UNDUS**, which approach very near to the Nature of **Participles**, such as *Erubundus*, *Laudundus*, *Populabundus*. They are formed from the **Imperf.** of the **Verb**, and their Signification is much the same with the **Participle** of the **Present Time**; only they signify **Abundance** or a great Deal of the Action, according to A. Gellius lib. 11. Cap. 17. or, according to others, they signify the same with the **Participles** of **Frequentative Verbs**, when these are in use. *Gronovius.*

A P P E N D I X of Gerunds and Supines.

GERUNDS and **SUPINES** (which because of their near relation to **Verbs** are by some not improperly called **Participial Words**) are a Sort of **Substantive Nouns**, expressing the **Action** of the **Verb** in general, or in the **Abstract**. **GERUNDS** are **Substantives** of the **Second Declension**, and complete in all their **Cases**, except the **Vocative**. **SUPINES** are **Substantives** of the **Fourth Declension**, having only two **Cases**, the **Accusative** in **I**, which makes the **First Supine**, and the **Ablative** in **U**, which makes the **Second**.

[Vossius lib. 8 Cap. 54. thinks that the Last Supine may sometimes be **Dative**; as, *Durum tactu*, i. e. tactui, for the **Datives** of the **Fourth Declension** of old ended in **u**. Also lib. 7. cap. 8. he takes Notice that these **Supines** have sometimes other **Cases**, (as *irrisu effe*,) yet they are only reckoned **Supines** by Grammarians, when the **First** comes after **Verbs** of **Motion**, and the **Second** after **Adjective Nouns**: Thus *dignus irrisu* is a **Supine** (according to them;) Non sine *irrisu audientium*, is not.]

De Indeclinabilibus Partibus Orationis.

C A P. V.

De Adverbio.

IN ADVERBIO potissimum spectanda est eius **Significatio**.

Adverbiorum Significatio-
nes variae sunt: earum vero
recipue ad sequentia capi-
revocari possunt.

Of the Indeclinable Parts of Speech.

C H A P. V.

Of Adverb.

IN an **ADVERB** is chiefly to be considered its **Signification**.

The Significations of **Adverbs** are various: but the chief of them may be reduced to the following Heads.

ADVERB is an indeclinable part of Speech, which being joined to a **Noun**, **Verb**, or other **Adverb**, expresses some Circumstance, Quality or Manner of their Signification.

I Adverbs denoting **CIRCUMSTANCE**, so chiefly these of **Place**, **Time** and **Order**.

in Hindostan

Adverbs

64. Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

1. Adverbs of PLACE are fivefold, viz.		2. Adverbs of TIME are thence viz. such as signify,	
Adverbs signifying Motion,		(1) Being in Time, either	
Unit,	Where?	Pro-	Name,
Hic,	Here.	- sent.	Hodie,
Ilic,			Heri,
Isthuc,	There.		Tunc,
Ibi,			Tum,
Intus,	Within.		Dudum,
Foris,	Without.		Pridem,
Ubique,	Every where.		Pridie,
Nusquam,	Nowhere.		Nudiustertius, 3 Days ago.
Alicubi,	Some where.		Nuper,
Aliibi,	Elsewhere,		Jamjam,
Uhivis,	Any Where.		Mox,
Undem,	In the same Place.		Statim,
Quo?	Whither?		Protinus,
Huc,	Hither.		Illico,
Illuc,	Thither.		Cras,
Isthuc,			Postridie,
Intro	To within.		Perendie,
Foris,	To without.		Nondum,
Eo,	To that Place.		
Alio,	To another Place.		QUANDO?
Aliquo,	To some Place.		Aliquando,
Eodem,	To the same Place.		Nonnunquam,
QUORUM?	Whitherward?		Sometimes,
Vetus,	Forward.		Interdum,
Horsum,	Hitherward.		Semper,
Morsum,	Thitherward.		Nunquam
Sursum,	Upward.		
Deorsum,	Downward.		Interim,
Antrosum,	Forward.		Quotidie,
Retrosum,	Backward.		
Dextrorum,	To the right Hand.	(2) Continuance of Time,	Diu,
Sinistrorum,	To the left Hand.		QUAMDIU?
Unde?	From whence?		Tamdiu,
Hinc,	From hence.		Jamdiu,
Illinc,			Jamdudum,
Isthinc,	From thence.		Jampridem,
Inde,			
Aliunde,	From elsewhere.	(3) Vicissitude or Repetition of Time,	QUOTIES?
Alicunde,	From same Place.		Sepe,
Sicunde,	If from any Place.		Raro,
Utrinque,	On both Sides.		Toties,
Superne,	From above,		Aliquisties,
Inferne,	From below.		Viciflim,
Calitus,	From Heaven.		Alternatum,
Funditus,	From the Ground.		Rufus,
QUA?	Which Way?		Iterum,
Hoc,	This Way.		Subinde,
Hac,			Identidem,
Isthac,	That Way.		Semel,
Alia,	Another Way.		Bis,
			Ter,
			Quater,
			Four Times.
(1) towards a Place,		Adverbs of Time	
(2) to a Place,		Adverbs of Motion	
(3) From a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(4) Towards a Place,		Adverbs of Direction	
(5) From a Place,		Adverbs of Distance	
(6) In a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(7) in a Place,		Adverbs of Time	
(8) in a Place,		Adverbs of Motion	
(9) From a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(10) Towards a Place,		Adverbs of Direction	
(11) From a Place,		Adverbs of Distance	
(12) In a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(13) in a Place,		Adverbs of Time	
(14) in a Place,		Adverbs of Motion	
(15) From a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(16) Towards a Place,		Adverbs of Direction	
(17) From a Place,		Adverbs of Distance	
(18) In a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(19) in a Place,		Adverbs of Time	
(20) in a Place,		Adverbs of Motion	
(21) From a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(22) Towards a Place,		Adverbs of Direction	
(23) From a Place,		Adverbs of Distance	
(24) In a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(25) in a Place,		Adverbs of Time	
(26) in a Place,		Adverbs of Motion	
(27) From a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(28) Towards a Place,		Adverbs of Direction	
(29) From a Place,		Adverbs of Distance	
(30) In a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(31) in a Place,		Adverbs of Time	
(32) in a Place,		Adverbs of Motion	
(33) From a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(34) Towards a Place,		Adverbs of Direction	
(35) From a Place,		Adverbs of Distance	
(36) In a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(37) in a Place,		Adverbs of Time	
(38) in a Place,		Adverbs of Motion	
(39) From a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(40) Towards a Place,		Adverbs of Direction	
(41) From a Place,		Adverbs of Distance	
(42) In a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(43) in a Place,		Adverbs of Time	
(44) in a Place,		Adverbs of Motion	
(45) From a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(46) Towards a Place,		Adverbs of Direction	
(47) From a Place,		Adverbs of Distance	
(48) In a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(49) in a Place,		Adverbs of Time	
(50) in a Place,		Adverbs of Motion	
(51) From a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(52) Towards a Place,		Adverbs of Direction	
(53) From a Place,		Adverbs of Distance	
(54) In a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(55) in a Place,		Adverbs of Time	
(56) in a Place,		Adverbs of Motion	
(57) From a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(58) Towards a Place,		Adverbs of Direction	
(59) From a Place,		Adverbs of Distance	
(60) In a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(61) in a Place,		Adverbs of Time	
(62) in a Place,		Adverbs of Motion	
(63) From a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(64) Towards a Place,		Adverbs of Direction	
(65) From a Place,		Adverbs of Distance	
(66) In a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(67) in a Place,		Adverbs of Time	
(68) in a Place,		Adverbs of Motion	
(69) From a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(70) Towards a Place,		Adverbs of Direction	
(71) From a Place,		Adverbs of Distance	
(72) In a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(73) in a Place,		Adverbs of Time	
(74) in a Place,		Adverbs of Motion	
(75) From a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(76) Towards a Place,		Adverbs of Direction	
(77) From a Place,		Adverbs of Distance	
(78) In a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(79) in a Place,		Adverbs of Time	
(80) in a Place,		Adverbs of Motion	
(81) From a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(82) Towards a Place,		Adverbs of Direction	
(83) From a Place,		Adverbs of Distance	
(84) In a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(85) in a Place,		Adverbs of Time	
(86) in a Place,		Adverbs of Motion	
(87) From a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(88) Towards a Place,		Adverbs of Direction	
(89) From a Place,		Adverbs of Distance	
(90) In a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(91) in a Place,		Adverbs of Time	
(92) in a Place,		Adverbs of Motion	
(93) From a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(94) Towards a Place,		Adverbs of Direction	
(95) From a Place,		Adverbs of Distance	
(96) In a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(97) in a Place,		Adverbs of Time	
(98) in a Place,		Adverbs of Motion	
(99) From a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(100) Towards a Place,		Adverbs of Direction	
(101) From a Place,		Adverbs of Distance	
(102) In a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(103) in a Place,		Adverbs of Time	
(104) in a Place,		Adverbs of Motion	
(105) From a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(106) Towards a Place,		Adverbs of Direction	
(107) From a Place,		Adverbs of Distance	
(108) In a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(109) in a Place,		Adverbs of Time	
(110) in a Place,		Adverbs of Motion	
(111) From a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(112) Towards a Place,		Adverbs of Direction	
(113) From a Place,		Adverbs of Distance	
(114) In a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(115) in a Place,		Adverbs of Time	
(116) in a Place,		Adverbs of Motion	
(117) From a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(118) Towards a Place,		Adverbs of Direction	
(119) From a Place,		Adverbs of Distance	
(120) In a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(121) in a Place,		Adverbs of Time	
(122) in a Place,		Adverbs of Motion	
(123) From a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(124) Towards a Place,		Adverbs of Direction	
(125) From a Place,		Adverbs of Distance	
(126) In a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(127) in a Place,		Adverbs of Time	
(128) in a Place,		Adverbs of Motion	
(129) From a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(130) Towards a Place,		Adverbs of Direction	
(131) From a Place,		Adverbs of Distance	
(132) In a Place,		Adverbs of Place	
(133) in a Place,		Adverbs of Time	
(134) in a Place,		Adverbs of Motion	
(135) From a Place,			

Part II. Chap. V. of Adverbs.

3. Adverbs of ORDER; &c.

Then.	Denique,	So forth.	Primi,	First,
Thereafter.	Denuo,	Of new.	Secondi,	Secondly,
Henceforth.	Denique;	Finally.	Tertiis,	Thirdly,
Moreover.	Postremo,	Lastly.	Quarti,	Fourthly.

The other Adverbs expressing QUALITY, MANNER, OTHER ABSOLUTE, or Comparative.

1. **QUALITY** simply; *as*, Boni, well; male, ill; fortis,勇敢; and innumerable others that come from Adjective Nouns, or Particles.
2. **CERTAINTY**; *as*, Profecto, certe, certant, plant, nre, utique, ita, etiam, truly, verily, yes; quidam, why not? omnino, certainly.
3. **CONTINGENCE**; *as*, Forte, fortior, fortissim, fort, happily, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.
4. **NEGATION**; *as*, Non, haud, not; nequamquam, not at all; nequit, quam, by no means; minime, nothing less.
5. **PROHIBITION**; *as*, Ne, not.
6. **SWEARING**; *as*, Hercle, pol, edipol, mecallor, by Hercules, by Pollux, &c.
7. **EXPLAINING**; *as*, Utroque, videlicet, scilicet, nimirum; nempe, to wit, namely.
8. **SEPARATION**; *as*, Scitum, apart; separation, separately; segregatum, one by ones; visitum, Mass by Mass; oppidatum, Town by Town, &c.
9. **JOINING TOGETHER**; *as*, Simul, unde, pariter, together; generaliter, generally; universaliter, universally; plerunque, for the most part.
10. **INDICATION, OR POINTING AT**; *as*, Ecce, ecce, lo, behold.
11. **INTERROGATION**; *as*, Cur, quare, quomodo; tibi, wherefore? Num, an, whether? Quomodo, qui, how? Tibi which add, Ubi, quo, quorum, unde, qua, quando, quandiu, quonies?
12. **EXCESS**; *as*, Valde, maxime, magnopere, summopere, admodum, oppidit, perquam, longe, very much, exceedingly; nimis, nimirum, too much; paucus, penitus, omnius, altogether, wholly; magis, more; melius, better; peius, worse; fortius, more bravely; and optimus, best; pessimus, worst; summissim, most bravely; and innumerable others of the Comparative and Superlative Degree.
13. **DEFECT**; *as*, Femic, scit, prop, propemodum, pene, absit; paucum, little; paullio, paullulum, very little.
14. **PREFERENCE**; *as*, Potius, satius, rather; potissimum, pricipue, praeferum, chiefly, especially; immo, yes, nay, nay rather.
15. **LIKENESS OR EQUALITY**; *as*, Ita, sic, adeo, so; ut, uti, sicut, sicuti, velut, veluti, ceterum, tanquam, quasi, *as*; *as if*; quemadmodum, even *as*; satis, enough; itidem, in like manner.
16. **UNLIKENESS OR INEQUALITY**; *as*, Alio, secus, otherwise; alioqui or alioquin, else; nequum, much more, or much less.
17. **ABATEMENT**; *as*, Scimus, passim, pedetentim, by degrees, by piecemeals; rix, scarcely; rix, hardly; with difficulty.
18. **EXCLUSION**; *as*, Tantum, solum, modo, exceptando, dominando, denunciando, only.

66 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

NOTE, 1. That ADVERBS seem originally to have been contained compendiously in one Word what must otherwise have required two or more; as, *Sapienter*, wisely, for *cum sapientia*; *hic*, for *in loco*; *semper*, for *in omni tempore*; *semel*, for *una vices his*, for *in vicibus*; *Hercle*, for *Hercules me iuruit*, &c. Therefore many of them are nothing else but Adjective *Nouns* or *Pronouns*, having the *Proper* and *Substantive* understood; as, *quod*, *id*, *eodem*; for *ad qua*, *ea*, *loci*; or *cui*, *et*, *eiderem loco*; for of old these Datives ended in *a*. *qua*, *bac*, *illac*, &c. are plain *Adjectives* in the *Abl. Sing. femin.* *the*, *qua*, a Way, and in being understood. Many of them are Compound, as, *quonodo* i. e. *quo modo*; *quemadmodum*, i. e. *ad quem modum*; *obrem*, i. e. *ob quam rem*, *quare*, i. e. *pro quo re*, *quorsum*, i. e. *versum locum*; *scilicet* i. e. *scire licet*; *videlicet*, i. e. *videre licet*; *iliac*, i. e. *licet*; *illico*, i. e. *in loco*; *magnopere*, i. e. *magnu opere*; *minimis* i. e. *minimis*, &c.

NOTE, 2. That of Adverbs of *Place*, those of the First Kind answer to the Question *ubi*? the Second to *quo*? the Third to *quorsum*? the Fourth to *unde*? and the Fifth to *qua*? To which might be added the Sixth, *Quonsque*? How far, answered by *Usque*, until; *Hucusque*, hitherto; *Longsque*, so far; *Hactenus*, hitherto, thus far; *Eatenus*, so far as; *Ante*, in some measure. But these are equally applied to *Place* and *Time*.

NOTE, 3. That Adverbs of *Time* of the First Kind answer to *quando*? of the Second to *quamdiu*, and *quamdudum* or *quampridem*? of the Third to *quoties*?

NOTE, 4. That Adverbs of *Quality* generally answer to the Question *quomodo*?

NOTE, 5. That some Adverbs of *Time*, *Place*, and *Order* are frequently used the one for the other; as, *Ubi*, where, and when; *inde* from Place, from that Time, thereafter, next; *hactenus*, thus far; *hactenus* to Place, Time or Order, &c. Other Adverbs also may be used under different Heads.

NOTE, 6. That some Adverbs of *Time* are either *past*, present or *future*; as, *jam*, already, now, by and by; *olim*, long ago, some time hence.

NOTE, 7. That Interrogative Adverbs of *Time* and *Place* doublet with the Adjection *cunque*, answer to the English Adjection *soror*, *ubique*, or *ubiquaque*, wheresoever; *quoquo*, or *quocunque*, whithersoever, &c. The same holds also in other Interrogative Words; as, *quisquis*, or *qui*, whosoever; *quotquot*, or *quotcunque*, how manysoever; *quantus*, or *quantus*, or *quantuscunque*, how greatsoever; *qualis*, *qualis*, or *qualiter*, of what kind or qualitysoever; *utrum*, or *stansque*, however, or hither, &c.

C A P. VI.

De Præpositione.

Præpositiones quæ regunt Accusativum, sunt viginti oīm, viz.

C H A P. VI.

Of preposition.

The Prepositions which govern the Accusative, twenty eight, viz.

Part II. Chap. VI. of Preposition. 67

ad.	Infra,	beneath.
at.	Juxta,	high to.
before.	Ob,	for.
	Propter,	
versus,	Per,	by, through.
versum,	Præter,	beside.
	Penes,	in the Power of.
contra,	Post,	after.
	Pone,	behind.
	Seus,	by, along.
	Secundum,	according to.
	Supra,	above.
	Trans,	on the farther side.
	Ultra,	beyond.

Prepositiones quæ regunt Ablativum, sunt quindecim, | The Prepositions which govern the Ablative, are Fifteen; viz.

From.	De,	of, concerning.
	E,	of, out of.
	Ex,	
	Pro,	for.
	Præ,	before.
	Palam,	with the Knowledge of.
	Sine,	without.
	Tenus,	up to.
	Super,	above.
	Subter,	beneath.

These Four govern sometimes the Accusative, and sometimes the Ablative,

Et quatuor interdum Accusativum, interdum Ablativum regunt,

in, into.
under.

That *Pone* and *Seus* rarely occur; And *Prope*, high; *Uffus*, windier; about; *Versus*, towards; which are commonly reckoned among the Prepositions governing the Accusative, and *Propterea* among those governing the Ablative, are Adverbs; and do not govern a Case of themselves, but by Preposition *ad*, which is understood to the first four, and *a* or *ab*, to the last four. To which perhaps may be added *Clavis*, which is joyned very frequently with the Accusative; *aa*, *Clavis patre* or *patrem*; *a* being understood the one, and *quoad* to the other.

Besides the separate Use of these PREPOSITIONS, there is another Use from them, namely their being put before a vast Number of Nouns and Verbs in Composition. Which creates a great Variety, and gives a great Elegance and Beauty to the Latin Tongue.

These

There are five or six Syllables, viz. AM, DI or DIS, RE, SE, &c. which are commonly called Imperable Propositions, because they are to be found in Compound Words: However they generally add something to the Signification of the Words with which they are compounded.

Am	{ signifies	again, afide or apart, together;	{	trivit about,	{	ambio, to surround,
Di				afunder,		divello, to pull asunder,
Dis				as		distrabo, to draw asunder,
Re				relego,		relego, to read again,
Se				seposito,		seposito, to lay aside,
Con				concreisco,		concreisco, to grow together,

C H A P. VII.

Of Interjection.

A N INTERJECTION is an indeclinable Word thrown into Discourse to signify some Passion or Emotion of the Mind.

Joy; as, Evax, hey brave, io.
Grief; as, Ah, hei, cheu, heu; ab, alas, woes woe.
Wonder; as, Papaz, O strange; Vah, bah.
Praise; as, Euge, well done.
Aversion; as, apage, away, begone, pby, tuff.
Reclaiming; as, Oh, prob! U.
Surprise or Fear; as, Atat; ha, abit.
Imprecation; as, Vze, woe, pox on't.
Laughter; as, Ha, ha, he.
Silencing; as, Au' st, pax, silence, bush, st.
Callings; as, Echo, io, ho, so bo, bo, O.
Detraction; as, Hui, away with.
Attention; as, Hem, bah.

NOTE, 1. That the same Interjection denotes sometimes one thing, sometimes another; as, Vah, which is used to express Joy, and sometimes Wonder, &c.

NOTE, 2. That some of them are natural Sounds, common to all Languages.

NOTE, 3. That Nouns are used sometimes for Interjections; as, Miserie with a Pox! with a mischief! Infandum! O shame! fy, fy! Miserie wretched! Nefas! O the villainy!

INTERJECTION is a compendious Way of expressing a whole Sentence in one Word; and used only to represent the Passions and Emotions of the Soul, that the Shortness of the one might the sooner express the Substance and Quickness of the other.

C H A P. VIII.

Of Conjunction.

A CONJUNCTION is an Indeclinable Word that joins Several Words together; and thereby shews their Dependance upon one another.

Part II. Chap. VIII. of Conjunctions. 6

Of these some are called,

POPULATIVE; *as, Et, ac, atque, quo, and, etiam, quoque, item,*
; cum, cum, both, and. Alio their Contraries, Nec, neque, nec, ne-
neither, nor.

DISJUNCTIVE; *as, Aut, vel, sive, either, or,*
CONCESSIVE; *as, Et si, etiam si, tametsi, licet, quanquam, quippe,*
alibi, albeit.

DIVERSATIVE; *as, Sed, verum, autem, ut, sit, argui, but; ta-*
m, attamen, veruntamen, verum enim vero, yet, notwithstanding, never-
less.

AUSAL; *as, Nam, namque, cuim, for; quia, quippe, quoniam, be-*
cause; quod, that, because.

ELATIVE or RATIONAL; *as, Ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque,*
before; quapropter, quo circa, wherefore; proinde, therefore; cum, quoniam,
ing, since, quandoquidem, forasmuch as.

FINAL or PERFECTIVE; *as, ut, utri, that, to the end that.*

CONDITIONAL; *as, Si, fin if; dum, modo, dummodo, provided, up-*
condition that; siquidem, if indeed.

EXCEPTIVE or RESTRICTIVE; *as, Ni, nisi, unless.*

DIMINUTIVE; *as, Salm, certe, at least.*

SUSPENSIVE or DUBITATIVE; *as, An, anne, num, whether;*
amor, whether, not; necne, or not.

EXPLETIVE; *as, Autem, vero, now, truly; quidem, euidem, in-*
ad.

ORDINATIVE; *as, Deinde, thereafter; denique, finally; insuper,*
moreover; ceterum, moreover, but, however.

DECLARATIVE; *as, Videlicet, scilicet, nempe, minime, &c. &c.* *to*
it, namely.

Note, 1. That the same Words, as they are taken in different Views,
both *Adverbs* and *Conjunctions*; *as, An, anne, &c.* are *Suffessive Con-*
nections, and *Interrogative Adverbs*. The same may be said of the *Ordina-*
tive and *Declarative Conjunctions*, which under another View may be
called *Adverbs of Order and Explaining*. So likewise *Utinam*,
which is commonly called an *Adverb of Wishing*, when more narrowly con-
sidered is nothing else but the *Conjunction Ut*, [*that*], with the *Syllable* *nam*
said *wit*, and *opto* [*I wish*] understood; *as, Utinam adfuisse; Ut te*
us male perdat; Supple Opto. But since both of them are indeclinable,
there is no great need of being very nice in distinguishing them.

Note, 2. That other Parts of Speech compounded together supply the
place of *Conjunctions*; *as, Postea, afterwards; praterea, moreover; propter-*
because, &c. Which are made up of the *Prepositions*; *post, prater & pro-*
pter, with ea the Pronoun.

Note, 3. That some *Conjunctions*, according to their natural ORDER,
stand first in a Sentence; *as, Et, aut, nec, si, &c. &c.* Some contrary to their
natural Order stand in the second Place, *viz. Autem, vero, quoque, quidem,*
&c. And some may indifferently be put either first or second, *viz. Nam-*
et, etenim, siquidem, ergo, igitur, itaque, &c. &c. Hence arose the Division
of them into *Prepositive*, *Subjunctive* and *Common*.

CHAP. IX.

A P P E N D I X containing some Observations concerning the various Divisions and Significations of Words, specially *Noun* and *Verb*.

1. **A LL** Words whatsoever are either *Simple*, or *Compound*. A **A PPLE** Word [*Simplex*] is that which was never made thus; as, *justus*, *lego*. A **C O M P O U N D** [*Compositum*] is that which is made of two or more Words, or of a Word and some Syllabical Adjective. *Injustus*, *perlego*, *derelinquo*, *egomet*.

2. All Words whatsoever are either *Primitive* or *Derivative*. A **P RIMITIVE** Word [*Primitivum*] is that which comes from no other Word. *Justus*, *lego*. A **D E R I V A T I V E** [*Derativum*] is that which comes from another Word; as, *Justitia*, *lectio*.

3. Besides the more general *Divisions of Nouns* and *Pronouns* mentioned on *Pag. 5.* and *22.* there are other particular *Divisions* of them taken by their various *Significations* and *Derivations*. The most remarkable which are these;

I. With Respect to *Signification*.

1. **A C O L L E C T I V E** [*Collectivum*] is a Substantive *Noun* which signifies many in the Singular Number; as, *Populus*, a People; *exercitus*, Army.

2. **An I N T E R R O G A T I V E** *Noun* or *Pronoun* [*Interrogativum*] is used by which we ask a Question; as, *Quis?* who? *Uter?* Which of the *Qualis?* Of what Kind? *Quantus?* How great? *Quot?* How many? These are called **I N D E F I N I T E S** when they are used without a Question.

3. **A R E L A T I V E** *Noun* or *Pronoun* [*Relativum*] is an Adjective with respect to something spoken before; as, *Qui*, *ille*, *ipso*, &c. *Alius*, *reliquis*, *cetera*, *-num*, *qualis*, *quantus*, &c.

4. **A P A R T I T I V E** *Noun* or *Pronoun* [*Partitivum*] is an Adjective which signifies many severally, and as it were one by one; as, *Omnis*, *quisque*, &c. or a Part of many; as, *Quidam*, *aliquis*, *neuter*, *nem*.

5. **A N U M E R A L** *Noun* [*Numerale*] is an Adjective which signifies Numbers, of which there are four principal Kinds,

(1) **C A R D I N A L**, [*Numerus Cardinalis*]; as, *Unus*, *duo*, *tres*, &c.

(2) **O R D I N A L**, [*Ordinalis*]; as, *Primus*, *secundus*, *tertius*, &c.

(3) **D I S T R I B U T I V E**, [*Distributivus*]; as, *Singuli*, *bini*, *terni*, &c.

(4) **M U L T I P L I C A T I V E**, [*Multiplicatus*]; as, *Simplex*, *duples*, &c.

II. With Respect to *Signification and Derivation*.

1. **A P A T R O N Y M I C K** *Noun* [*Patronymicum*] is a Substantive *Noun* derived from another Substantive Proper, signifying one's Pedigree or extraction; as, *Priamides*, the Son of *Priamus*; *Priamis*, the Daughter of *Priamus*; *Metias* the Daughter of *Eetes*, *Nerine* the Daughter of *Neurus*. *Patronymicks* are generally derived from the Name of the Father, but the Poets (for others seldom use them) derive them also from the Grandfather, or some other remarkable Person of the Family; nay sometimes from the Founder of a Nation or People, and also from Countries or Cities; as, *Aeacides*, the Son, Grandson, Great Grandson, or one of the Postivity of *Aeacus*; *Romulus*, the Romans, from their first King *Rome*.

Part II. Chap. IX. Appendix, &c. 71

Sicilis, Troas, a Woman of Sicily, of Troy, &c. **Patronymicks** of end in *des*; of Women in *ie*, *as* and *ae*. These in *des* and *as* of the *Fifth*, and those in *ie* and *ae* of the *Third Declension*.

An **ABSTRACT** Noun [*Abstractus*] is a Substantive derived from Adjective, expressing the Quality or that Adjective in general, with Regard to the thing in which the Quality is; as, *Bonitas*, Goodness; *sæde*, Sweetness; from *bonus*, good; *dulcis*, sweet. With Respect to these Nouns, the Adjectives from which they come are called **CONCRETES**, use besides the Quality they also confusedly signify something as the Effect of it, without which they cannot make Sense.

A **GENTILE** or **PATRIAL** Noun [*Gentile* or *Patrium*] is an Adjective derived from a Substantive Proper signifying one's Country; as, *Scotus*, *Scotia*, *Arpinus*, *Edinburgensis*, *Taodunanus*, a Man born in *Scotland*, *Caledonia*, *Arpinum*, *Edinburgh*, *Dundee*; from *Scotia*, *Macedonia*, *Arpi*, *Edinburgum*, *Taodunum*.

A **POSSESSIVE** Noun [*Possessivum*] is an Adjective derived from Substantive whether Proper or Appellative, signifying Possession or Proprietary; as, *Scoticus*, *Herculeus*, *Paternus*, *Herilis*, *Femina*, of or belonging to Scotland, Hercules, a Father, a Master, a Woman from Scotia, Hercules, Pater, Herilis, Femina.

A **DIMINUTIVE** Noun [*Diminutum*] is a Substantive or Adjective derived from another Substantive or Adjective respectively, importing a diminution or Lessening of its Signification; as, *Libellus*, a little Book; *chartula*, a little Paper; *Opusculum*, a little Work; from *liber*, *charta*, *opus*: *Parvulus*, very little; *Candidulus*, pretty white; from *parvus*, *candidus*. These for the most part end in *lus*, *la*, or *lum*, and are generally of the same Gender with their Primitives.

A **DENOMINATIVE** Noun [*Denominatum*] is a Substantive or Adjective derived from another Noun; as, *Gratia*, favour; *Vinea*, a vineyard; *Senator*, a Senator; from *gratus*, *vinum*, *senex*: *Cœlestis*, heavenly, *manus*, humane; *Aureus*, golden; from *caelum*, *homo*, *aureum*.

A **VERBAL** Noun [*Verbale*] is a Substantive or Adjective derived from a Verb; as, *Amor*, Love; *Doctrina*, Learning; *Lectio*, a Lesson; *Auditus*, Hearing; from *amo*, *doceo*, *lego*, *audio*: *Amabilis*, lovely, *Copax*, capable, *Volucer*, swift; from *amo*, *capio*, *volo*.

Lastly there are some Nouns derived from **Participles**, **Adverbs** and **Prepositions**; as, *Fictarius*, counterfeit; *Crasinus*, belonging to the Morrow; *Contrarius*, contrary; from *fictus*, *cras*, *contra*.

NOTE. That the same Nouns, according to the different Respects in which they are considered, may sometimes be ranked under one, and sometimes under another of the above mentioned Classes; as, *Quis* is an **Interrogative**, **relative**, or **Partitive**; *Pietas* an **Abstract** or **Denominative**.

II. **Pronouns** are divided into four Classes, viz.

1. **DEMONSTRATIVES**, *Ego*, *tu*, *sui*.
2. **RELATIVES**, *Ille*, *ipse*, *ille*, *hic*, *is*, *quis*, *qui*.
3. **POSSESSIVES**, *Mens*, *tunc*, *suis*, *noster*, *vester*.
4. **PATRIALS** or **Gentiles**, *Nostras*, *vestras*, *cujas*.

Of them also two are **INTERROGATIVES**, *Quis* & *enjas*.

III. 1. **VERBS** with respect to their **Figure** or **Frame** are either **SIMPLE**; as, *Amo*, I love: or **COMPOUND**; as, *Kedamo*, I love again.

2. With Respect to their Species or Origins are either PRIMITIVE, as, *Lero*, I read; or DERIVATIVE; as, *Latito*, I read frequently.
3. With Respect to their Conjugation, are either REGULAR, as, *Amo*; or IRREGULAR; as, *Volo*, *vis*, &c.
4. With Respect to their Constituent Parts, are either COMPLETE, as, *Amo*; or DEFECTIVE; as, *Inquam*; or REDUNDANT; as, *adis*, &c. &c.
5. With Respect to their Persons, are either PERSONAL; as, *Amo*, *impersonal*; as, *Possit*.
6. With Respect to their Terminations, they end either in Q; as, *am*, or in R; as, *Amor*; or in M; as, *Sum*.
7. With Respect to their Signification, Verbs are either Substantive or Adjective.

(1) A SUBSTANTIVE Verb [Substantivum] is that which signifies simply the Affirmation of Being or Existence; as, *Sum*, *fio*, *exilio*, I am.

(2) An ADJECTIVE Verb [Adjectivum] is that which together with the Signification of being, has a particular Signification of its own; as, *a. Sum amans*, I am loving.

An Adjective Verb is divided into Active, Passive and Neuter.

[1] An ACTIVE Verb [Activum] is that which affirms Action of its Person or Nominative before it; as, *Amo*, *loquor*, *curro*.

[2] A PASSIVE Verb [Passivum] is that which affirms Passion of its Person or Nominative before it; as, *Amor*.

[3] A NEUTER Verb [Neutrum] is that which affirms neither Action nor Passion of its Nominative; but simply signifies the State, Power or Quality of things; as, *sto*, *sedeo*, *maneo*, *duro*, *vireo*, *fluo*, *quiesco*, &c. To stand, sit, stay, endure, to be green, to be yellow; to be at rest.

An Active Verb is again divided into Transitive and Intransitive.

[1] An Active TRANSITIVE Verb [Transitivum] is that whose Action passeth from the Agent to some other thing; as, *Amo patrem*.

[2] An Active INTRANSITIVE Verb [Intransitivum] is that whose Action passeth not from the Agent to any other thing; as, *cambo*.

Whento any Verb you put the Question WHOM? or WHAT? if a rational Answer can be returned, the Verb is Transitive; as, *Who*, *what* do you teach? Answ. a Boy, the Grammar; If not, it is Intransitive; as, *What* do you run, go, come, live, sleep, &c. to which no rational Answer can be given; unless it be by a Word of like Signification, which sometimes indeed these Verbs have after them; as, *Vivo vitam jucundam*. I live a pleasant Life; *Ego iter longum*, I go a long journey.

NOTE, 1. That the same Verb is sometimes Transitive, and sometimes Intransitive; as, *Per incipit*, the Spring begins, Cic. *Incipere facinus*, begin an Action. Plant.

NOTE, 2. That Neuter and Intransitive Verbs are often Englished by the Signs of a Passive Verb; as, *Calcp*, I am hot; *palleo*, I am pale; *Jacobus abiit*, James is gone.

NOTE, 3. That Neuter and Intransitive Verbs want the Passive Verb, unless impersonally used, as the Intransitive Verbs most frequently adverbially are; as, *magnitur*, *itur*, *venit* &c.

Tho all Verbs whatsoever, with Respect to their Signification, belong to some one or other of the foregoing Classes, yet because Grammarians

with the Signification of Verbs, are obliged also to consider their Termination, and finding that all Active Verbs did not end in *a*, without all others in *or*, it was judged convenient to add to the former two three other Classes or Kinds of them, viz. *Deponent*, *Common* and *Neuter*.

[1.] A DEONENT Verb [Deponens] is that which has a Passive Termination, but an Active or Neuter Signification; as, *Lugor*, I speak; *mori*, I die.

[2.] A COMMON Verb [Comunis] is that which under a Passive Termination has a Signification either Active or Passive; as, *Criminor*, I accuse, or I am accused; *Dignor*, I think, or am thought worthy.

[3.] A NEUTER PASSIVE [Neutro-passivus] is that which is half Active and half Passive in its Termination, but in its Signification is either wholly Passive; as, *Fio*; or wholly Active or Neuter; as, *Andeo, dirigitur, daret, gaudeo, gauisus sum*, to rejoice.

8. To omit the other Kinds of Derivative Verbs, which are not very material, there are three Kinds of them derived from Verbs which deserve to be remarked, viz. *Frequentatives*, *Inceptives*, and *Desideratives*.

[1.] FREQUENTATIVES [Verba Frequentativa] signify Frequency of Action: They are formed from the last Supine, by changing *atu* into *am* from Verbs of the first, and *u* into *o* from Verbs of the other 3 Conjugations. They are all of the first; as, *Clamito*, to cry frequently, from *clamo*; *dormito*, to sleep often, from *dormio*. From them also are formed other Frequentatives; as, *Carto, curso, cursus; jacio, jacto, jactus; pulso, pulsito* and *pulito*.

[2.] INCEPTIVES [Verba Inceptiva] signify that a thing is begun and tending to Perfection. They are formed from the 2 Pers. Sing. Plur. Ind. by adding *co*. They are all of the third Conjugation, and want both Preterit and Supine; as, *Caleo, cales, calesto*, I grow or wax warm.

[3.] DESIDERATIVES [Verba Desiderativa] signify a Desire of Action: They are formed from the last Sopine, by adding *no*: They are all of the fourth Conjugation, and generally want both Preterit and Supine; as, *Canaturio*, I desire to sup; *Ejuri*, I am hungry, or I desire to eat.

9. Lastly in Construction Verbs receive Names from their more particular Significations; as, *Vocative Verbs*, or Verbs of naming; Verbs of remonstrating, of want, of teaching, of accusing, &c.

[In the preceeding Division of Verbs with Respect to their Signification, have receded a little from the common Method; and in particular I have given a different Account of Neuter Verbs from that commonly received by Grammarians, who comprise under them all Intransitive Verbs, to their Signification be never so much Active. But this I did partly from the Reason of the Name, which imports a Negation both of Action and passion, and partly to give a distinct View of the Significations of Verbs, without regard to their Terminations, which in that Respect are purely accidental and arbitrary.

I have also excluded from the Divisions of Verbs those called NEUTRAL PASSIVES [Lat. Neutra Passiva] because originally they are Active Verbs; for the primary Signification of *vapulo*, is *perco* or *ploro*; of *exsulo*, *extra sum eo*; of *veneo*, *venum eo*; of *nubo*, *velo*. *Liceo* indeed is a very singular Verb, for in the Active Voice it signifies Passively, and in the Passive Actively.

PARS TERTIA.

De Sententiis, sive Oratione.

SENTENTIA est quævis animi cogitatio, dubius aut pluribus vocibus simul junctis enunciata; ut, *Tu legis*; *Tu legis libros*; *Tu legis libros bonos*; *Tu legis libros bonos domi*.

We are now arrived at the principal Part of *Grammar*; for the End of Speech being to convey our Thoughts unto others, it will be of Use to us to have a Stock of Words, and to know what Changes can be made upon them, unless we can also apply them to Practice, and make them answer the great Purposes for which they are intended. To the attainment of this End there are two things absolutely necessary, viz. I. That in Speech we dispose and frame our Words according to the laws and Rules established among those whose Language we speak. II. That in like Manner we know what is spoken or written, and be able to explain in due Order, and resolve it into the several Parts of which it is made. The First of these is called SYNTAX or CONSTRUCTION, and the Second is named EXPOSITION or RESOLUTION. The first sheweth us how to speak the Language our selves; and the second how to understand it when Spoken by others: Tho' it must be owned, that there is a necessary Connexion between them, that he that is Master of the first cannot be ignorant of the second.

C A P. I.

De Syntaxi, sive Constructione.

SYNTAXIS est recta vox cum in Oratione compositione.

Eius partes sunt—duæ, Concordantia & Regimen.

Concordantia est quando una dictio concordat cum altera in quibusdam accidentibus.

Regimen est quando dictio regit certum casum.

PART THIRD

Of Sentences, Speech.

A SENTENCE is Thought of the Mind, put by two or more Words together; as, You read; You read Books; You read good Books; You read good Books at home.

C H A P. I.

Of Syntax, or Construction.

SYNTAX is the right ordering of Words in Speech.

Its Parts are two, Concord and Government.

Concord is when one Word agrees with another in some incident.

Government is when Word governs a certain Case.

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 77

NOTE, 1. That the Difference between Concord and Government consists in this, that in Concord there can no Change be made in the Adjective, that is, Gender, Case, Number, or Person of the one, but the like Change must also be made in the other; but in Government the first Word (if Declinable) may be changed without any Change in the second. Concord the first Word may be called the *Word Directing*, and the second the *Word Directed*: In Government the first is called the *Word Governing*, and the second the *Word Governed*.

NOTE, 2. That for the greater Ease both of Masters and Scholars, we have noted these Words wherein the Force of each Example lieth with the letters [a] and [b], the Word Directing or Governing with [a] and the Word Directed or Governed with [b] or where there are two Words Directing or Governing, the first with [a] and the second with [aa]; and where two Words directed or Governed, the first with [b] and the second with [bb].

De Concordantia.

CONCORDANTIA est quatuor duplex,

1. *Adjectivi cum Substantivo.*
2. *Nominativi cum Verbo.*
3. *Relativi cum Antecedente.*
4. *Substantivi cum Substantivo.*

REGULAE.

ADJECTIVUM concordat cum Substantivo in genere, numero & casu; ut,

* *Vir b bonus;*

* *Femina b casta;*

* *Dulce b pomum;*

I. Of Concord.

CONCORD is Fourfold,

1. *Of an Adjective with a Substantive.*
2. *Of a Verb with a Nominative.*
3. *Of a Relative with an Antecedent.*
4. *Of a Substantive with a Substantive.*

R U L E I.

AN Adjective agrees with a Substantive in Gender, Number and Case; as,

A good Man.

A chaste Woman.

A sweet Apple.

NOTE, 1. That the way to find out the Substantive is to ask the Question WHO, or WHAT? to the Adjective; for that which answers to it is the Substantive. And the same Question put to the verb or Relative, discovers the Nominative or Antecedent.

NOTE, 2. That another Adjective sometimes supplies the Place of Substantive, as; *Amicus certus;* A true Friend. *Bona seruit;* Good Venison. *Homo* being understood to *Amicus*, and *Cervus* to *Ferina*.

NOTE, 3. That the Substantive THING [Nogitum] is most frequently understood; and then the Adjective is always put in the latter Gender, as if it were a Substantive; as, *Triste, [Supple negotium]* i. e. Res tristis; A sad thing. *Bona, [Supple negotium]* i. e. Res bona; Good things.

16 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

R E G . II.
2 VERBUM concordat
 cum Nominative an-
 te se in numero & perso-
 na ; ut ,

- * *Ego b lego;*
- * *Tu b scribis;*
- * *Præceptor b docet;*

Note, That the Infinitive Mood frequently supplies the Place of the Nominative ; as, *Momiri non est meus*, To lie is not mine, my Property.]

R U L E II.

A V E R B agrees with
 Nominative before
 in Number and Person ;

I read.

You write.

The Master teacheth.

A N N O T A T I O N E S.

3 1. VERBA Substan-
 tiva, Vocandi & Gestuha-
 bent utrinque Nominati-
 vum ad eandem rem perti-
 nentem ; ut ,

- * *Ego aa sum b discipulus* ; I am a Scholar.
- * *Tu aa vocaris b Joannes* ; You are named John.
- * *Illa aa incedit b Regina* ; She walks [as] a Queen.

2. Substantive Verbs are *Sum*, *fis*, *forem* and *existo*.

3. Verbs of Naming are these Passives, *Appellor*, *dicor*, *vocor*, *nomi-
 nor*, *monicipor*; to which add *Videor*, *existimor*, *creor*, *constitutor*, *designor*, &c.

4. Verbs of Gesture are *Eo*, *incedo*, *venio*, *cubo*, *sto*, *sedes*, *re-
 fugio*, *dormio*, *somnio*, *mango*, &c.

Note, That any Verb may have after it the Nominative, which
 belongs to the same thing with the Nominative before it ; as, *Habui
 vi hoc puer* ; I heard it being [or when I was] a Boy. *Defensum
 Rempublicam adolescens, non deseram senes* ; I defended the Com-
 wealth [when I was] a young Man, I will not desert it [now that
 am]. old Cic.

4 2. EXCEP. Infiniti-
 vus Modus Accusativum
 ante se habet ; ut ,

Gaudeo b te a valere ; I am glad that you are well.

Note, That when the Participle THAT [in Lat. QUOD or UT] comes between two Verbs, it is elegantly left out, by turning the Nom-
 inative Case into the Accusative, and the Verb into the Infinitive. Nam
 as, *Aiunt Regem adventare* ; They say [that] the King is coming ; rather
 than, *Aiunt quod Rex adventat*. *Turpe est eos qui bene nati
 turpiter vivere* ; 'Tis a shamefull thing, that they who are well
 should live basely : Rather than, *Ut illi turpi:er vivant*. See Page 43.

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction.

3. q̄ ESSE habet casum post se quem
ut se; ut, Petrus cupit ^a esse vir
doctus; Scio ^a Petrum ^a esse b' vi-
rum doctum; Mihi b' negligentis ^a esse
non licet;
- ESSE hath the same Case,
after it than it hath before
it; at, Peter desires to be a learn-
ed Man.
I know that Peter is a
learned Man.
I am not allowed to be
negligent.

NOTE, 1. That we frequently say, *Licet subi esse bonos*; We may be
ad. *Tibi expedit esse sedulius*; 'Tis expedient for you to be diligent.
minim unquam vocavit suisse pium; It never hurted any Man that he hath
been pious: But then, the Accusative *Nos* is understood; thus, *Licet*
bis [nos] esse bonos, &c.

NOTE, 2. That if *Ese* and the other Infinitives of Substantive Verbs,
as of Naming, &c. have no Accusative or Dative before them,
the Word that follows (whether Substantivus or Adjective) is to be
put in the Nominative; as, *Dicitur esse vir*; He is said to be a Man. *Nemo*
*debet dici beatissi-
me suum obitum*; No man should be called happy before his Death.

R E G. III.

R ELATIVUM *Qui,*
qua, *quod* concordat cum Antecedente
in genere & numero; ut,
Vir sapit b qui pauca lo-
quitur;

1 Si nullus interveniat Nominativus inter Relativum & Verbum, Relativum erit verbo Nominativus; ut,

Precepior a qui b docet,

2. At si interveniat Nominativus inter Relativum & Verbum, Relativum erit ejus casus quem Verbum aut Nomen sequens, vel Præpositio præcedens regere solent; ut,

Deus a quem b colimus;

b Cujus a munere vivimus;

Cui nullus est b similis;

Ab quo facta sunt omnia;

R U L E III.
T HE Relative Qui, quæ, 6
quod agrees with the Antecedent in Gender and Number; as,

He is a wise Man who speaks little.

1. If no Nominative come between the Relative & the Verb, the Relative shall be the Nominative to the Verb; as,

The Master who teacheth.

2. But if a Nominative come between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative shall be of that Case, which the Verb or Noun following, or the Preposition going before use to govern; as,

God whom we worship.

By whose Gift we live.

To whom there is none like.

By whom all things were made.

NOTE

Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

NOTE, 1. That the Antecedent is a Substantive Noun that governs the Relative, and is again understood to the Relative. Wherefore it is not be amiss to teach the Scholar to supply it every where; *Beware of Idleness*, which [Idleness] is *an Enemy to Virtue*. *Cogitatum, quae [cognitum] est inimica virtutis*. Nay Cicero himself, especially *Cesar*, frequently repeat the Substantives; as, *In oppidum fugisti, quae in oppido: &c.* You fled to a Town, in which Town. *Dicunt quo die ad ripam Rhodani convenient*. They appoint Day on which Day they should meet upon the banks of the Rhone. *Cof.*

NOTE, 2. That when the Relative respects a whole Sentence it is put in the Neuter Gender; as, *Joannes mortuus est, quod mihi suadet*; John is dead, which is a great grief to me.

NOTE, 3. That the Person of the Relative is always the same with that of its Antecedent; as, *Ego qui doceo*; I who teach. *Tu qui scis*; You who learn.

ANNOTATIO.

9. ¶ Duo vel plura Substantiva singularia Conjunctione [&, ac, atque, &c.] copulata, habent Adjectivum, Verbum vel Relativum plurale; ut,

*a Petrus & a Joannes
b qui b/sunt b dotti.*

Two or more Substantives Singular coupled together by a Conjunction [&, ac, atque &c.] have a Verb, Adjective or Relative Plural; as,

Peter and John who are learned.

NOTE, 1. That when the Substantives are of different Gender, the Adjective or Relative plural must agree with the Masculine rather than the Feminine or Neuter; as, *Pater & mater qui sunt mortui*. Father and Mother who are dead.

EXCEP. But if the Substantives signify things without Life, the Adjective or Relative plural must be put in the Neuter Gender; as, *Divitiae, decus, gloria in oculis sita sunt*; Riches, Honour and Glory are set before your Eyes.

NOTE, 2. That when two or more Nominatives are of different Persons, the Verb plural must agree with the First Person rather than the Second; and the Second rather than the Third; as, *Si tu et Tullia valitis, ego & Cicero valemus*; If you and Tullia are well, and Cicero are well.

NOTE, 3. That the Adjective or Verb frequently agree with the Substantive or Nominative that is nearest them, and are understood of the rest; as, *Et ego in culpa sum & tu*; Both I and you are in the Fault: Or, *Et ego & tu es in culpa*. Nihil hic debet nisi carmine desinet. This manner of Construction is most usual, when different Words signify one and the same thing, or much to the same purpose; As, *Mens, ratio & consilium in sensibus est*; Understanding Reason and Prudence is in old Men.

NOTE, 4. That Collective Nouns, because they are equivalent to Plural Number, have sometimes the Adjective or Verb in the Plural Number; as, *Pars virgis erat*, A part of them were scourged. *Tumultus*; The Crowd rushed.

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction.

R E G. IV.

NUM Substantivum
concordat cum alio
etdem rem significante in

Cicero b Orator ;
Urbs b Edinburgum ;
Filius b delicia marris
sue ;

To these four Concordia add a Fifth, viz. that of the Response agreeing with its Interrogative in Case; as, *Quis dedit tibi pecuniam?* Pater. Who gave you Money? My Father. *Quo caro?* Cibo. What do you want? A book. But this ought not to be made a principal Rule; For the Response, or the Word that answers Question, does not depend upon the Interrogative, but upon the Word, or some other Word joined with it, which, because spoken immediately before, is generally understood in the Answer; thus, *Quo dedit tibi pecuniam?* Pater [dedit mihi pecuniam.] *Quo caro?* [Caro]

II. De Regimine.

REGIMEN est-tri-plex,
1. Nominum,
2. Verborum,
3. Vocab Indeclinabilium.

REGIMEN Nominum.

S 1. Substantivorum.

R E G. I.

J NUM Substantivum
regit aliud rem di-
ferentiam significans in Geni-
vo; ut,

a Amor b Dei ;

a Lex b naturae;

NOTE, 1. That OF or 's is the ordinary Sign of this Genitive.
NOTE, 2. That the Relative Pronouns ejus, illius, cuius, &c. Englished His, her, its, their, thereof, whereof, whose, have their Substantives generally understood; as, *Liber ejus*, (supple *Hominis*, *Famiae*, &c.) *is book or her book. Libri eorum*; Their books.

A N N O T A T I O N E S.

* 1. Si posterius Sub- | 1. If the last Substantive is
stantivum adjunctum ha- | have an Adjective of Praise
boast

R U L E IV.

O NE Substantive agrees
with another signifying the
same thing in Case; as,

Cicero the Orator.

The City Edinburgh.

A Son the Darling of his
Mother.

Of Government.

G OVERNMENT is
Threefold.
1. Of Nouns.
2. Of Verbs.
3. Of Words indeclinable.

I. The Government of Nouns.

S 1. Of Substantives.

R U L E I.

O NE Substantive governs
another signifying a dif-
ferent thing in the Genitive;
as,

The Love of God.

The Law of Nature.

Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

beat Adiectivum laudis vel
vituperii, in Genitivo vel
Ablativo poni potest; ut,
• *Vix b summa b prudenter*,
vel b summa b prudentia;
• *Puer b probi b indolis*, vel
proba b indoles;

or Dispraise joined with
it may be put in the Genitive
or Ablative; as,

A Man of great Wisdom.

- 63 * 2. Adiectivum in neu-
tro genere absque Substan-
tivo regit Genitivum; ut,
• *Multum b pecunie*;

• *Quid b rei*?

2. An Adjective in the Neuter Gender without a Substantive governs the Genitive;

Much Money.

What is the Matter?

This is more elegant than *Multa pecunia*; *Quares*?

NOTE, 1. That these Adjectives which thus govern the Genitive, as if they were Substantives, are generally such as signify *Quantity*, as, *Multum, tantum, quantum, plus, plurimum*.

NOTE, 2. That *Plus* and *Quid* always govern the Genitive, upon that account are by many thought real Substantives.

§ 2. Adiectivorum,

R E G. I.

- 14 * **A**DJECTIVA ver-
balia, vel Affectione-
m animi significantia
Genitivum postulant; ut,
• *Avidus b gloria*;
• *Ignarus b fraudis*;
• *Memor b beneficiorum*;

§ 2. Of Adjectives.

R U L E I.

VERBAL Adjectives,
such as signify an Af-
fection of the Mind re-
quiring the Genitive; as,
Desirous of Glory,
Ignorant of Fraud,
Mindful of Favours.

To this Rule belong,

1. Adjectives of DESIRE; as, *Cupidus, ambitiosus, avarus, ho-
sus, curiosus, &c.*
2. Of KNOWLEDGE; as, *Peritus, gnarus, prudens, collu-
pidus, doctus, dolicus, prescissus, frasagus, certus, memor, eruditus,
peritus, consilicus, &c.*
3. Of IGNORANCE; as, *Ignarus, ruditus, imperitus, nescius,
scimus, incertus, dubius, anxius, sollicitus, immemor.*
4. Of GUILT; as, *Conscius, convictus, manifestus, suspectus, na-
pervicax.* And *Amatus, cupiens, appetens, patiens, fugiens, furens,
gligens.*
5. Verbs in AX and NS; as, *Edax, capax, forax, fugax, im-
pervicax.*
6. To which may be referred, *Amulius, magnificus, parsus, profusus,
profusus, securus.*

R E G.

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 8

R E G. II.

PARTITIVA & partitive posita, Comparativa, Superlativa, Interrogativa & quædam Numeralia. Genitivo pluralis, ut;

Aliquis b Philosophorum;
Senior b fratrum;
Dotissimus b Romanorum;
Quis b nostrum?
Una b Musarum;
Octavus b sapientium;

Note, 1. That 'tis easy to know when this Rule takes Place, by resolving the Genitive into *Inter*, with the *Accus.* or *de*, *e*, *ex*, with the *Abl.* *Optimus Regum*, The best of Kings, i.e. *Optimus inter Reges*, or *de*, *e*, *Regibus*.

Note, 2. That when there are two Substantives of different Gender, the Partitive, &c. rather agrees with the first than the last; as, *us sumnum maximus*. Cic. *Leo animalium fortissimus*. Plin. Otherwise it is of the same Gender with the Substantive it governs; as, *una animalium*. *Unaquaque feminarum*.

Note, 3. That Partitives, &c. take the Genitivo singular of Collective Nouns, and do not necessarily agree with them in Gender; as, *stansimus nostre civitatis*. Cic. *Nymphaeum sanguinis una*. Virg.

R E G. III.

DEJECTIVA significantia commodum vel commodum, similitudinem vel dissimilitudinem, genti Dativum; ut,

a Utilis b bello;
Perniciosus b Republica;
Similis b patri;

Note, 1. That some of these Adjectives govern also the Genitive, *amicus*, *inimicus*, *socius*, *vicus*, *par*, *equalis*, *similis*, *dissimilis*, *communis*, &c.

Note, 2. That Adjectives signifying Motion or Tendency to a thing choose rather the Accusative with *ad*, than the Dative, such as, *prolixus*, *pronus*, *propensus*, *velox*, *celer*, *tardus*, *piger*, &c.; as, *piger ad venas*. *Principes, ad premia velox*. Ovid.

Note, 3. That Adjectives signifying Fitness, or the contrary, may either of them; as, *aptus*, *ineptus*, *bells* or *ad bellum*.

F

q Ver.

R U L E II.

PARTITIVES and Words 15 plac't partitively; Comparatives, Superlatives, Interrogatives and some Numerals govern the Genitive plural; as,

Some one of the Philosophers.
The elder of the Brothers.
The most learned of the Romans.
Which of us? [mans.
One of the Muses.
The Eighth of the wise Men.

R U L E III.

DEJECTIVES signifying 16 Profit or Disprofit, Likeness or Unlikeness, govern the Dative; as,
Profitable for War.
Pernicious to the Commonwealth.
Like his Father. [wealth.

- 17 * Verbalia in BILIS & DUS regunt Dativum; ut, Verbals in BILIS and DUS govern the Dative; as,
 a. Amandus vel amabilis To be beloved of
 b. omibus; Men.

OF or BY is the ordinary Sign of this Dative.

Note, That Particles of the Preter Tense, and Passive Voice, especially among the Poets, have frequently the Dative instead of the Ablative with A or AB; as, Nullus eorum mibi visus est; none of them was seen by me. Non audior ulli; I am not heard by any.

R E G. IV.

- 18 * ADJECTIVA dimensionem significantia regunt Accusativum mensuræ; ut,

Columna sexaginta p. et
mes a alta;

R U L E IV.

ADJECTIVES signify Dimension govern Accusative of Measure; as,

A Pillar Sixty feet high.

The Adjectives of DIMENSION are, *altus*, high or deep; *sus*, or *densus*, thick; *latus*, broad; *longus*, long; *profundus*, deep; *brevis*, short; *obesus*, fat; *cubitus*, a Cubit; *alna*, an Ell; *passeus*, a Pace.

Note, That sometimes the Word of Measure is put in the Nominative, as, *Fossa sex cubitis alta*, a Ditch six feet high.

R E G. V.

- 19 * COMPARATIVUS regit Ablativum, qui resolvitur per QUAM; ut,

a. Dulcior b. melle;

b. Praestantior b. auro;

R U L E V.

THE Comparative Degree governs the Ablative which is resolved by Quam;

Sweeter than Honey.

Better than Gold.

Let the following Examples be observed and imitated: *Maior*; Much better. *Nihilo peior*; Nothing worse. *Major solito*; Larger than usual. *Quo diligenter es, eo doctior evades*; The more diligent you are, the more learned you will become. *Quanto superbior, tanta peior*; The prouder, the less worth. *Nil Virgilio doctius*; There is none more learned than Virgil.

R E G. VI.

- 20 * DIGNUS, Indignus, Contentus, Præditus, Captus & Fretus: Item Natus, Satus, Ortus, Editus, & similia, Ablativum pertinet; ut,

a. Dignus b. honore;

b. virtute;

Worthy of Honour. Endued with Virtue.

R U L E VI.

THESE Adjectives, Dignus, Indignus, Contentus, Præditus, Captus & Fretus: Also Natus, Satus, Ortus, Editus, and the like, require the Ablative; as,

a. Prædicatio b. honore;

b. virtute;

Endued with Virtue.

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. Pg.

vo; Content with little. *a Captus b oculis*; Blind.
a Fretus b viribus; Trusting to his Strength. *a Orr
tus b Regibus*; Descended of Kings.

R E G. VII.

ADJECTIVUM co-
piæ aut inopiz. re-
t. Genitivum vel Ab-
tivum; ut,
a Plenus b ira vel b ira;
a Inops b rationis;

R U L E V I I.

A N ADJECTIVE of 21
Plenty or Want governs
the Genitive or Ablative;
as,
Full of Anger.
Void of Reason.

NOTE, 1. That *Dilectus*, *gravidus*, *resertus*; and *orbis*, *vacans*,
lucus, choose rather the Ablative: *Indignus*, *compos* and *impos* the Genitive.
NOTE, 2. That some comprehend *Opus* and *Usus*, when they signify
necessity, under this Rule; as, *Quid opus est verbis?* What need is
there of Words? *Ovid. Nec viribus nesci.* Now there is Need of Strength:
g. But 'tis to be remarked that these are Substantive Nouns, the ve-
lame with *Opus*, *operis*, a Work, and *Usus*, *usus*, Use; and have
the Ablative after them because of the Preposition IN, which is under-
ood. Sometimes *Opus* hath the Nominative by Numb. 3. as, *Dixi opis*
est, We stand in need of a Leader. It is elegantly joined with
the Participle Perfect; as, *Consulto, maturato, invento, facio*, &c. *opus est*;
We must advise, make haste, find out, do, &c.

I. REGIMENT Verborum.

§ 1. Personatum.

R E G. I.

* **S**UM quoties pos-
sessionem, propri-
etatem aut officium signifi-
cat, regit Genitivum; ut,
a Est b Regis punire re-

II. The Government of Verbs.

§ 1. Of Personal Verbs.

R U L E I.

b belles;
*b Insipientis a est dicere non
putaram;*
b Militem a est suo duci pa-
rere;

SUM when it signifies 22
Possession, Property,
or Duty, governs the Geni-
tive; as,

It belongs to the King to
punish Rebels.
It is the Property of a Fool
to say I had not thought.
It is the Duty of Soldiers
to obey their General.

¶ *Excipiuntur hi No-*
minativi, *Meum, tuum,*
tuum, nostrum, vestrum, ut;
a Tuum a est id praeclarare;

These Nominatives *Meum*, 23
tuum, suum, nostrum, ve-
strum, are excepted; as,
It is your Duty to manage
that.

To these last may be added Possessive Nouns, such as *Regium hum
bellum*, and the like ; as, *Humanum efferrare*, It is incident to Man
to err.

NOTE. That to all these are understood *Officium*, *opus*, *negotia*,
some other Word to be gathered from the Sentence ; as, *Me Pompei
tum esse scis*, You know that I am wholly Pompey's, or in Pompey's
service. *Cit. i. e. amicum, fonsorem*, or the like.

R E G. II.

24 * **MISEREOR**, *miser-*

sco & satago regunt
Genitivum ; *ut*,

a Misereere b civium tuo-

rum ; *ut*,

a Satagit b rerum fuerum ; *ut*,

R E G. III.

25 **E ST** pro *habeo* regit Da-

tivum Personæ ; *ut*,

a Est b mibi liber ; *ut*,

a Sunt b mibi libri ; *ut*,

This is more elegant than *Habeo librum*, or *Habeo libros*.

So *Desum* is used elegantly for *Careo* ; as, *Desunt mibi libri*, *fa-*
re libris, I want Books.

R E G. IV.

26 **S UM** pro *affero* regit
duos Datiyos, unum per-

sonæ, alterum rei ; *ut*,

a Est mibi b voluptati ; *ut*,

NOTE. That other Verbs, such as, *Do*, *duco*, *verto*, *tribuo*, *habet*,
linquo, &c. may have two Datives ; as, *Hoc tibi laudiatur* ; You are
praised for this. *Ne mibi vitio veritas* ; Do not blame me.

To this may be referred such Expressions as these, *Est mibi nomen Io-*
ni, My Name is John; Which is more elegant than *Est mibi nomen Ju-*
nes or *Joannis*.

R E G. V.

27 **V ERB U M** significans

commodum vel incom-

modum regit Dativum ; *ut*,

Fortuna a favet b fortibus ; *ut*,

b Nemini a noceas ; *ut*,

R U L E V.

A Verb signifying *Advan-*
tage or *Disadvantage*

governs the Dative ; as,

Fortune favours the brave

Do hurt to no Man.

This is a very general Rule, and (when we signify a thing to be
required to any Person or thing) almost common to all Verbs. But in
more particular manner are comprehended under it;

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 85

1. To PROFIT or HURT ; as, *Conmodo, profitio, places, consulo, noceo, officio.* But *Ledo* and *offendo* govern the Accus.
2. To FAVOUR, HELP, and their contraries ; as, *Pareo, an-suo, arrideo, assentior, multiplicor, gratulor, ignesco, indulgeo, parco, adolor, planudo, blandior, lenocinor, palpor, studio, supplico, &c.* Al-so, *Auxilior, adminiculor, subvenio, succurro, patrocino, medeor : Al-so, Derogo, detrabo, invideo, &c.* But *Jubeo* has the Accus.
3. To COMMAND, OBEY, or RESIST ; as, *Impero, pre-cipo, mando : Pareo, servio, obedio, obsequor, obtempero, morem ge-ro, morigeror, famulor : Pugno, repugno, certo, obfio, reluctor, re-sistor, refisto, adversor, refragor, &c.* But *Jubeo* governs the Accus.
4. To THREATEN or be ANGRY with ; as, *Minor, indi-gnor, irascor, succenso.*
5. To TRUST ; as, *Fido, confido, credo.*

6. Verbs compounded with SATIS, BENE, and MALE ; as, *Satisfa-benefacio, benedico, malefacio, maledico.*

7. The Compounds of the Verb SUM ; as, *Adsum, presum, obsum.*

8. Verbs compounded with these 10 PREPOSITIONS, *Ad, ante, in, inter, ob, post, pra, sub and super* ; as, 1. *Adsto, accumbo, acquiescio, adbarco, admovo, 2. Antecello, anteo, antevertio. 3. Con-stituo, commisCEO, condono, commorior. 4. Illudo, immixto, inbarco, infideo, innitor, invigilo, incumbo. 5. Interpono, intervenio, interfero. 6. Preto, obrecto, occumbo. 7. Postpono, posthabeo. 8. Pratio, prestat for-ecellit, praluceo. 9. Succedo, submittio, subjicie. 10. Superfio, supervenio.*

NOTE, 1. That TO the Sign of the Dative, is frequently understood.

NOTE, 2. That TO is not always a Sign of the Dative, for 3. Verbs of Local Motion ; as, *Eo, venio, profiscor, and 2. These Verbs voco, toco, invito, hortor, specto, pertineo, attineo and such like, have the Accusative with the Preposition ad.*

R E G. VI.

ERBUM activè signi-ficans regit Accusati-
onem ; ut,

^a Cole b Deum ;

^a Reverere b parentes ;

R U L E VI.

A VERB signifying active- 28
ly governs the Accusative ;
as,

Worship God,
Reverence your Parents.

NOTE, That Neuter and Intransitive Verbs have sometimes an Accusative after them. 1. Of their own or the like Signification : as, *Vivere am, Gaudere gaudium, Sitire sanguinem, Olere bircum.* 2. When used in a Metaphorical Sense ; as, *Ardebat Alexia, i. e. Vehementer ar-bat.*

* Recordor, memini, re-mi-niscor & obliuiscor re-gint Accusativum vel Genitivum ; ut,

^a Recordor b lectionis vel b lectionem ;

^a Obluiscor b injuria, vel b injuriam ;

Recordor, memini, remi- 29
niscor and obliuiscor govern
the Accusative or Genitive ;
as,

I remember my Lesson.

I forget an Injury.

V E R B A Activa alium
una cum Accusativo co-
sum regentia.

30 * 1. **VERBA** accusandi,
damnandi & absolvendi,
cum Accusativo personæ
regunt etiam Genitivum
criminis ; ut,

a Arguit b me bb furti ;
b Me ipsum bb inertia a con-
demno ;
b Illum bb homicidii a absol-
vunt ;

ACTIVE Verbs govern
ing another Case together
with the Accusative.

1. **VERBS** of Accusing, Con-
demning and Acquitting
the Accusative of the Per-
son govern also the Genitivum
of the Crime ; as,

He accuses me of The
I condemn my self ei-
ziness.

They acquit him of No
slaughter.

1. Verbs of ACCUSING are, Accuso, ago, appello, arcesso, arguo, di-
ffingo, defero, incuso, insimulo, postulo, &c.

2. Verbs of CONDEMNING are, Damno, condemnio, convince, &c.

3. Verbs of ABSOLVING are, Solvo, absolvio, libero, purgo, &c.

NOTE, 1. That this Genitive may be changed into the Ablative, as, Purgo te bac culpa, or de hac culpa.
I clear you of this Fault. Exm de vi condemnavit ; He found him
of a Riot. Csc.

NOTE, 2. That the Genitive properly speaking is governed by the
Ablative understood, such as, Crimine, pena, actione, causa ; as, a-
sare furti, i. e. criminis furti. Condemnare capitum, i. e. pena capitum.

NOTE, 3. That Crimine, pena, actions, capite, morte, scarcely
of a Preposition.

31 2. **VERBA** comparan-
di, dandi, narrandi & au-
ferendi, regunt Dativum
cum Accusativo ; ut,

a Comparo b Virgilium
bb Homero ;
b Suum bb cuique a tribuito ; Give every Man his own
a Narras fabulam bb surdo ; You tell a Story to the
Man.

a Eripuit b me bb morti ; He rescued me from Death

2. **VERBS** of Comparing,
Giving, Declaring and Tak-
ing away, govern the Dativum
with the Accusative ; as,

I compare Virgil to Homer,

Give every Man his own
You tell a Story to the
Man.

1. To Verbs of COMPARING belong also Verbs of Present
Postponing.

2. To Verbs of GIVING belong Verbs of Receiving, promising,
sending, bringing.

3. To Verbs of DECLARING belong Verbs of Explaining, sum-
marizing, denying, &c.

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 87

* Verbs of TAKING away are, *Ausero, adimo, eripo, eximo, damo, rapi, detrabo, tollo, extendo, extorqueo, arceo, defendo, &c.*

NOTE, 1. That many of these Verbs govern the Dative by Numb. 27.

NOTE, 2. That innumerable other Verbs may have the Dative with the Accusative, when together with the thing done is also signify'd the person or thing to, or for whom it is done; as, *Doce mibi filium, Teach me my Son.* *Cura mibi hanc rem,* Take Care of this Affair for me.

NOTE, 3. That *Comparo, confero, compono*, have frequently the Ablative with case.

* 3. VERBA rogandi & cendi duos admittunt Accusativos, priorem personæ, posteriorem rei; ut,
Posee b Deum bb veniam;
Docuit b me bb Grammaticam; He taught me Grammar.

NOTE, 1. That among the Verbs that govern two Accusatives are also reckoned these following;

1. CELO; as, *Cela hanc rem uxorem,* Conceal this from your wife. *Plant.* But we can say also, *Celote dehat re,* and *Celo tibi hanc.*

2. Verbs of CLOATHING; as, *Induit se calceos,* He put on his shoes. But these have more commonly the Ablative of the thing without a Preposition; as, *Vestit se purpurā,* He cloaths himself with Purple. *Duo* and *Exuo* have frequently the Person in the Dative, and the thing in the Accusative; as, *Tberacem sibi induit,* He put on his Breast-plate.

3. MONEO; as, *Id unum te moneo,* I put you in mind of this one thing. But unless it is some general Word, (as, *Hoc, illud, id, &c.*) *moneo, admoneo, commonesacio* have either the Genitive; as, *Admoneo te scii,* I put you in Mind of your Duty: Or the Ablative with *de;* as, *De hac re te sapiens admonxi,* I have frequently warned you of this.

NOTE, 2. That Verbs of Asking often change the Accusative of the Person into an Ablative with the Preposition; as, *Oro, exoro, peto, peto hoc a te,* I intreat this of you. Some always; as, *Contendo, quaro, sciscitor hoc a te.* Finally some have the Accus. of the Person, and the Ablative of the Thing with *de;* as, *Interrogo, consulio, percontor te huc re.*

ANNOTATIO.

* Quorum Activa duos casus regunt, eorum Passiva posteriorem retinent;

^a Accusor b furti;

Virgilius a comparatur

b Homero;

^a Doceor b Grammaticam,

* The Passives of such Active Verbs as govern two Cases, do still retain the last of them; as,

I am accused of Theft.

Virgil is compared to Homer.

I am taught Grammar.

R E G. VII.

- 34 * PRETIUM rei a quo-
vis Verbo in Abla-
tivo regitur; ut,
a Emi librum b duobus affi-
bus; [am; [for God
a Vendidit hic b auro patri.
Demosthenes a docuit b ra-
lento;

- 35 * Excipiuntur hi Geni-
tivi, Tanti, quanti, pluris,
minoris; ut,
b Quantus a constitit?
Affe S. b pluris;

Note, That if the Substantive be expressed, they are put in
Ablatives; as, Quanto pretio? Minore mercede.

- 36 * VERBA æstimandi,
regunt hujusmodi Geniti-
vos, Magni, parvi, nihilis,
&c. ut,

a Estimo te b magni;

1. Verbs of Valuing are, *Æstimo*, *pendo*, *sacio*, *babeo*, *duco*, *pato*,
2. The rest of these Genitives are, *Minoris*, *minimi*, *tanti*, *que*
pluris, *plurimi*, *maximi*, *nauci*, *floci*, *pili*, *assis*, *teruncii*, *bujus*.
Æqui and *boni* after *sacio* and *consulo*.

Note, 1. That we say also *Æstimo magno*, *parvo*, supple *petra*

Note, 2. That *Alvarus* excludes *majoris*, as wanting Authority.

R E G. VIII.

- 37 * VERBA copia & in-
opia plerumque Ab-
lativum regunt; ut,
a Abundat b divitiis;
a Caret omni b culpa;

Sometimes they have the Genitive; as, *Eget eris*, He wants more
Horat. Impletur veteris Bacchi, They are filled with old Wine. V. 17.

Note, That Verbs of Loading and Unloading, and the like, belong
to this Rule; as, *Navis oneratur mercibus*, The Ship is loaded with
goods. *Levabo te hoc onere*, I will ease you of this Barden. *Liberem*
nos metu, He delivered us from Fear.

- 38 * Utor, abutor, fruor,
fungor, potior, vescor re-
gunt Ablativum; ut,

R U L E V H.

- THE Price of a [is]
is governed in the
ative by any Verb; as,
I bought a Book for t
bus; [am; Shillings. [for God
a Vendidit hic b auro patri. This Man sold his Coun
Demosthenes a docuit b ra- Demosthenes taught for
lento; Talent.

- * These Genitives, Tan
quanti, pluris, minoris, a
excepted; as,
How much cost it?
A Shilling and more.

- * VERBS of Valuing
govern such Genitives as the
Magni, parvi, nihilis, &
as,

I value you much.

1. Verbs of Valuing are, *Æstimo*, *pendo*, *sacio*, *babeo*, *duco*, *pato*,
2. The rest of these Genitives are, *Minoris*, *minimi*, *tanti*, *que*
pluris, *plurimi*, *maximi*, *nauci*, *floci*, *pili*, *assis*, *teruncii*, *bujus*.
Æqui and *boni* after *sacio* and *consulo*.

Note, 1. That we say also *Æstimo magno*, *parvo*, supple *petra*

Note, 2. That *Alvarus* excludes *majoris*, as wanting Authority.

R U L E V I I I .

- VERBS of Plenty or
Scarceness for the most
part govern the Ablative; a
He abounds in Riches.
He has no Fault.

- Utor, abutor, fruor, fu-
gor, potior, vescor govern
the Ablative; as,

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 892

Utitur b fraude;

He uses Deceit.

Abutitur b libris;

He abuses Books.

To these Verbs add *Nitor, gaudeo, muto, dono, munero, emunemus, ito, beo, fido, impertio, importior, dignor, nascor, creor, afficio, con-
seguor, &c.*

NOTE. 1. That *Potior* sometimes governs the Genitive; as, *Potiri ha-*

*poterit, i. To get his Enemies into his Power. Potiri rerum, To have the
Rule.*

§ 2. Regimen Verborum Impersonalium.

R E G. IX.

VERBUM Impersona-
le regit Dativum; ut,

* *Expedit b Republicæ;*

* *Licet b nemini peccare;*

such as these, *Accidit, contingit, evenit, conductit, expedit, habet, libert, placet, displicet, vacat, restat, prestat, liquet, nocet, dolet, sufficit,*
together with the Dative they have commonly an Infinitive after
them, which is supposed to supply the Place of a Nominative before them.

* EXCEP. 1. *Refert Interest Genitivum po-*

ulant; ut,

* *Refert b patris;*

* *Interest b omnium;*

* *At Mea, tua, sua, no-
stra, vestra ponuntur in
accusativo plurali; ut,*

* *Non b mea a refert;*

* EXCEP. 2. *Hæc inque Miseret, paenitet,
let, tæder & piget re-
nt Accusativum personæ,*

in Genitivo rei; ut,

* *Miseret b me bb rui;*

* *Paenitet b me bb peccati;*

* *Tædet b me bb vitæ;*

Note, That this Genitive is frequently turned into the Infinitive;

Paenitet me peccasse; Tædet me vivere; and so they fall in with the
owing Rule.

* EXCEP. 3. *Hæc qua-*

or, Debet, delectat, juvat,

cet, dilectat, juvay, opor-

§ 2. The Government of Impersonal Verbs.

R U L E IX.

A N Impersonal Verb go- 39

A vers the Dative; as,

It is profitable for the State.

No Man is allowed to sin.

EXCEP. 1. Refert and In-

terest require the Genitive;

as,

It concerns my Father.

It is the Interest of all.

*But Mea, tua, sua, no-
stra, vestra are put in the Ac-
cusative Plural; as,*

I am not concerned.

EXCEP. 2. These five Mi-

seret, paenitet, pudet, tædet

*and piget govern the Accusa-
tive of a Person, with the Ge-*

nitive of a Thing; as,

I pity you.

I repent of my sin.

I am weary of my Life.

EXCEP. 3. These four De-

cet, dilectat, juvay, opor-

oper-

*Oportet, regunt Accusati-
vum personæ cum Infiniti-
tive; ut,*

a Delectat b me bb studere; I delight to study. [scilicet,

Non a decet b te bb rixari; It does not become you

Note, That Oportet is elegantly joined with the Subjunctive Mode, UT being understood; as, Oportet facias, [You must do it,] for Oportet te facere.

Attinet, Pertinet and Spectat, when used impersonally (which rarely happens) have the Accusative with ad, as was observed above, Page

**§ 3. REGIMEN Infinitivi,
Participiorum, Gerundio-
rum & Supinorum.**

R E G. X.

43 U N I M Verbum regit
alium in Infinitivo; ut,
a Cupio b discere.

Sometimes it is governed by Adjectives; as, *Cupidus, &c cupiens* desiderans. Note, That the Verb *Cupit* or *caepiunt* is sometimes understood; as, *Omnes mibi caevidere*; supple *caepiunt*, They all began to envy me.

R E G. XI.

44 P A R T I C I P I A, Gerundia
& Supina regunt Casum suorum verborum; ut,
a Amans b virtutem;
a Carens b fraude;

i. G E R U N D I A.

45 1. G E R U N D I U M in
DUM Nominati-
vi Casus cum verbo [est]
regit Dativum; ut,
a Vivendum est b mibi recte; I must live well.
a Moriendum est b omnibus; All must die.

This Dative is frequently understood; as, *Eundum est* [supple *erit*], We must go.

Note, That this Gerund always imports Necessity, and the Dative after it is the Person on whom the Necessity lies.

46 2. G E R U N D I U M in DI
regitur a Substantivis vel
Adjectivis; ut,
a Tempus b legendi;
a Cupidus b descendendi;

tet, govern the Accusative
the Person with the Infinitive
as,

**§ 3. The GOVERNMENT
of the Infinitive, Parti-
ciples, Gerunds and Supines.**

R U L E X.

O N E Verb governs another
the Infinitive; as,
I desire to learn.

R U L E XI.

P A R T I C I P L E S, Gerundia
and Supines govern the
Case of their own Verbs; as,
Loving Virtue.
Wanting Guile.

I. G E R U N D S.

1. T H E G E R U N D in
DUM of the Nomina-
tive Case with the Verb [est]
governs the Dative; as,
I must live well.

2. The Gerund in DI
governed by Substantives
Adjectives; as,
Time of reading.
Desirous to learn. i. T

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 9

The Substantives are such as these, *Amor, causa, gratia, sustinens, ius, occasio, ars, otium, voluntas, cupido, &c.*

The Adjectives are generally Verbs mentioned Note. 14.

Gerundium in DO Da-

*Casus regitur ab Adje-
tivo utilitatem vel apti-
tudinem significantibus; ut,*

Charta a utilis b scribendo; Paper useful for writing.

The Adjective of Fitness is often understood ; as, *Non est salvando;* He
is not able to pay. [Supple *aptus* or *par.*]

Note, That sometimes this Gerund is governed by a Verb ; as,
idicium querendo operam dabo; I'll endeavour to find out Epidem. Plant.

4. Gerundium in DUM

*accusativi Casus regitur
Præpositionibus ad vel*

ter; ut,

Promptus a ad b audiendum; Ready to hear. [ing.

Attentus a inter b docendum; Attentive in time of teach-

Note, 1. That it hath sometimes, but very rarely, the Prepositions *ob*
et ante ; as, *Ob absolendum munus.* For finishing your Task. Cic.
ante domandum. Before they are tamed or broken. Virg. speaking of Horses.
Note, 2. That what was the Gerund in *dum* of the Nominative with
the Verb *Est, fit, suit, &c.* becomes the Accusative with *esse* ; as, *Omnibus
enim esse novimus;* We know that all must die.

5. Gerundium in DO Ab-

*ativi Casus regitur a Præ-
positionibus a, ab, de, e, ex, vel in; ut,*

Tenq a b peccando absterret; Punishment frightens from

Sinning.

* *Vel sine Præpositione,*

ut Ablativus Modi vel

Causæ; ut,

Memoria b excolendo a-

getur;

* *Defessus sum b ambulan-*

do;

6. Gerundia Accusati-

*vum regentia vertuntur e-
leganter in Participia in*

DUS, quæ cum suis Sub-

stantivis in Genere, Nume-

ro & Casu concordant; ut,

3. The Gerund in DO of

*the Dative Case is governed
by Adjectives signifying Use-*

fulness or Fitness ; as,

Charta a utilis b scribendo; Paper useful for writing.

The Adjective of Fitness is often understood ; as, *Non est salvando;* He

is not able to pay. [Supple *aptus* or *par.*]

Note, That sometimes this Gerund is governed by a Verb ; as,

idicium querendo operam dabo; I'll endeavour to find out Epidem. Plant.

4. The Gerund in DUM of

the Accusative Case is govern-

ed by the Prepositions ad or

inter; as,

Promptus a ad b audiendum; Ready to hear. [ing.

Attentus a inter b docendum; Attentive in time of teach-

Note, 1. That it hath sometimes, but very rarely, the Prepositions *ob*

et ante ; as, *Ob absolendum munus.* For finishing your Task. Cic.

ante domandum. Before they are tamed or broken. Virg. speaking of Horses.

Note, 2. That what was the Gerund in *dum* of the Nominative with

the Verb *Est, fit, suit, &c.* becomes the Accusative with *esse* ; as, *Omnibus*

enim esse novimus; We know that all must die.

5. The Gerund in DO of

the Ablative Case is govern-

ed by the Prepositions, a, ab,

de, e, ex, or in; as,

Tenq a b peccando absterret; Punishment frightens from

Sinning.

* Or without a Preposition, so

as the Ablative of Manner or

Cause ; as,

The Memory is improved

by exercising it.

I am wearied with walk-

ing.

6. Gerunds governing the

Accusative are elegantly turn-

ed into the Participles in

DUS, which agree with their

Substantives in Gender, Num-

ber and Case ; as,

Peren.

Petendum est pacem;
Tempus petendi pacem;
Ad petendum pacem;
A petendo pacem;

Petenda est pax.
Tempus petendae pacis.
Ad petendam pacem.
A petenda pace.

Add to these the *Gerunds* of *Fugor*, *fugor* and *potior*.

These *Participles* in *DUS* are commonly called **GERUNDIVI**.

NOTE, 1. That the *Substantive* must always be of the same Case that the *Gerund* was of.

NOTE, 2. That because of its noisy Sound the *Gerund* in *di* is either changed into the *Genitive* plural; but either the *Accusative* is retained as, *Studio patres vestros videndi*, and not *Patrum vestrorum videndi*; or it is turned into the *Genitive* Plural, without changing the Genus as, *Patrum vestrorum videndi studio*.

S U P I N A.

* 52 1. Supinum in **UM** ponitur post verbum *Motus*; ut,

* *Abiit b deambulatum;*

S U P I N E S.

* 1. *The Supine in UM* put after a Verb of Motion,

He hath gone to walk.

The *Supine* in **UM** is elegantly used with the *Verb Es*, when we signify that one sets himself about the doing of a thing; as, *In vita tu laudem is quaesumus?* Are you going to advance your Reputation at the hazard of my Life? *Ter.* And this is the Reason why this *Supine*, with *iri* taken Impersonally, supplies the Place of the *Future* of the *Infis. Passive*.

* 53 2. Supinum in **U** ponitur post nomen *Adjecti-*

vum; ut,

* *a Facile b dictu;*

2. *The Supine in U* is put after an *Adjective*, *Noun*, as,

Easy to tell, or to be told.

Some general Remarks on the Construction of Particles, Gerunds and Supines.

NOTE, 1. That *Participles*, *Gerunds* and *Supines* have a twofold Construction, one as they partake of the Nature of *Verbs*, by which they govern a certain Case after them; another as they partake of the Nature of *Nouns*, and consequently are subject to the same Rules with them.

1. A *Participle* is always an *Adjective*, agreeing with its *Substantive*, by *Numb. 1.*

2. A *Gerund* is a *Substantive*, and construed as follows (1.) That in *dum* of the *Nominative* by *Numb. 2.* Of the *Accus.* by *Numb. 6.* (2.) That in *di* by *Numb. 11.* or *14.* (3.) That in *do* of the *Dat.* by *Numb. 16.* of the *Ablat.* by *Numb. 63, 70, or 55.*

3. A *Supine* is also a *Substantive*, (1.) That in *um* governed by *ad* understood, by *Numb. 67.* (2.) That in *u* governed by *in* understood by *Numb. 1.*

NOTE, 2. That the Present of the *Infinitive Active*, the first *Sensu* and the *Gerund* in *dum* with the *Preposition ad*, are thus distinguished. The *Supine* is used after *Verbs of Motion*; the *Infinitive* after other *Verbs*; The *Gerund* in *dum* with *ad* after *Adjective Nouns*. In these last are frequently to be met with after *Verbs of Motion*; and Poets use also the *Infinitive* after *Adjectives*.

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 93

Note, 3. That the Present of the Infinitive Passive, and the past are thus distinguished: The Supine hath always an Adjective with it; which the Infinitive hath not, unless among Poets.

4. Constructio CIR- CUMSTANTIARVM.

Adjective Nouns, but especially Verbs have frequently some CIRCUMSTANCES going along with them in Discourse; the most considerable whereof with respect to Construction are these Five. 1. The Cause why any thing is done. 2. The Way or Manner how it is done. 3. The Instrument or Thing wherewith it is done. 4. The place where. And 5. The Time when it is done.

Causa, Modus & Instru- mentum.

R E G. XII.

CAUSA, Modus & Instru-
mentum ponuntur in Ablativo; ut,
1. Pallo b metu;
2. Fecit suo b more;
3. Scribo b calamo;

54. The Construction of Circumstances.

I. The Cause, Manner and Instrument.

R U L E XII.

THE Cause, Manner, and 54.
Instrument are put in the
Ablative; as,
I am pale for Fear.
He did it after his own way.
I write with a Pen.

Note, 1. That the CAUSE is known by the Question CUR, or QUARE? Why? Wherefore? &c. The MANNER by the Question QOMODO? How? And the INSTRUMENT by the Question QOCUM? Wherewith?

Note, 2. That the Preposition is frequently express with the Cause and Manner; as, Prae gaudio, For joy. Propter amorem, For love. Ob paucum, For a Fault. Cum summo labore, With great Labour. Per deum, With Disgrace. But the Preposition [CUM] is never added to the Instrument, for we cannot say Scribo cum calamo; Cum oculis vidi.

Note, 3. But here we must carefully distinguish between the Instrument and what is called the Ablativus Comitatus, or Ablative of Company, i. e. signifying that something was in Company with another; then the Preposition [CUM] is generally express; as, Ingressus est per gladio, He entred with a Sword, i. e. having a Sword with him, or at him.

Note, 4. That to Cause some refer the Matter of which any thing made; as, Clypeus are fabricatus; A Shield made of Brass: But (except with the Poets) the Preposition is for the most part express.

Note, 5. That to Manner some refer the Adjunct, i.e. something added to another thing; as, Terra omnia floribus, a Land pleasant with flowers. Mons nivis candidus, a Hill white with Snow.

Note, 6. That to Instrument some refer Conspicere dolore, inedia, Precequor odio, amore, &c. Afficio te honos, contumelia, &c. Lascivo appetitu, &c.

2. Locus.

2. Locus.

R E G. XIII.

- 55 * 1. N O M E N oppidi
ponitur in Gen-
nitivo cum Quæstio sit per
U B I ; ut,
• Vixit b Rome ;
• Mortuus est b Londini ;

- 56 * EXCEP. Si vero sit
tertiae Declinationis aut
Pluralis Numeri, in Abla-
tivo efficitur ; ut,
• Habitat b Carthaginem ;
• Studuit b Parisiis ;

- 57 * 2. Cum Quæstio sit per
Q U O nomen oppidi in Ac-
cusativo regitur ; ut,

- Venit b Edinburgum ;
• Profectus est b Atheneas ;

- 58 * 3. Si queratur per U N-
D E vel Q U A , nomen op-
pidi ponitur in Ablativo ;
ut,

- Discessit b Aberdonia ;
• Laodicea iter a faciebat ;

- 59 * 4. Domus & Rus eodem
modo quo oppidorum no-
mina construuntur ; ut,
Manet domi, He stays at home. Domum revertitur,
returns home. Domo aceritus sum, I am at
from home. Vivit rure or ruri. Abiit rus. Rediit

- 60 5. Nominibus regio-
num, provinciarum, & ali-
orum locorum non dicitis
Præpositio sere additur ; ut,
U B I ? Nasus in Scotia, in Fifa, in urbe, &c.
Q U O ? Abiit in Scotiam, in Fifam, in [vel ad] moun-

2. Place.

R U L E XIII.

1. T H E Name of a
thing, when the Q uæstion
made by U B I , [Where];
He lived at Rome.
He died at London.

- EXCEP. But if it is
the third Declension, or
Plural Number, it is con-
tinued in the Ablative ; as,
He dwells at Carthage.
He studied at Paris.

2. W h e n the Q uæstion
made by Q U O , [Whither]
the Name of a Town is go-
ing in the Accusative ; as,
He came to Edinburgh.
He went to Athens.

3. If the Q uæstion is
by U N D E , [Whence]
Q U A , [by or through
Place,] the Name of a
thing is put in the Ablative ; as,
He went from Aberdeen.
He went through Laodicea.

4. Domus and Rus
construed the same way
Names of Towns ; as,
Manet domi, He stays at home. Domum revertitur,
returns home. Domo aceritus sum, I am at
from home. Vivit rure or ruri. Abiit rus. Rediit

5. To Names of Coun-
Provinces, and other Places
mentioned, the Preposi-
tion generally added ; as,
UBI ? Nasus in Scotia, in Fifa, in urbe, &c.
Q U O ? Abiit in Scotiam, in Fifam, in [vel ad] moun-

UNDE? Rediit e Scotia, e Fifa, ex arte, &c.

QUA? Transiit per Scotiam, per Fifam, per urbem, &c.

NOTT, 1. That the Proposition is frequently added to Names of Towns especially when the Question is *Ubi?* Unde? or *Quo?*) and sometimes omitted to Names of Countries, Provinces, &c.

NOTT, 2. That *Huius*, *Militia* and *Belli* are also used in the Genitive when the Question is made by *Ubi?* as, *Proculibit tunc*, he lies down the Ground. *Domi militaque una fuimus*, We were together both home and abroad, or in Peace and War. *Ter. Belli domique agitabili.* Was managed both in Peace and War. *Sed.*

NOTT, 3. That when the Name of a Town is put in the Genitive, *urbis* is understood, and therefore we cannot say *Natus est Roma urbis illius*, but *urbis nobilis*.

These Rules concerning Names of Towns may be expressed,

Name of Town after	{ IN or AT TO or UNTO FROM or THROUGH }	is put in the	{ Genit. or Abl. Accusative. Ablative. }
--------------------	--	---------------	---

i.e. When it is of the third Declens. or of the Plur. Number. But when AT signifies about or near a Place, we make use of the Proposition as, *Bellum quod ad Trojam gererat*. Ving.

ANNOTATIO.

* *Distantia unius loci ab alio ponitur in Accusativo, et in Ablativo; et in Aternum & in Ablativo;* The Distance of one Place from another is put in the Accusative, and sometimes in the Ablative; as,

Glascua a distat Edinburgi triginta b millia passuum; her vel bitinere unius dicitur. Glasgow is thirty Miles distant from Edinburgh, One Days Journey.

3. Tempus.

R E G. XIV.

1. TEMPUS ponitur in Ablativo cum questio fit per QUANDO;

2. Venit b hora tertia;

2. Cum questio fit per QUAMDIU, tempus ponitur in Accusativo vel Ablativo, sed saepius Accusativo; ut,

3. TIME.

R U L E XIV.

1. TIME is put in the Ablative, when the Question is made by QUANDO, [When;] as,

He came at three oClock.

2. When the Question is made by QUAMDIU, [How long,] Time is put in the Accusative or Ablative, but often in the Accusative; as,

* Man.

a Manis paucos b dies; He stayed a few Days
Sex b mensibus a bfuis; He was away six Months

- These two Rules may be thus express'd.
1. Nouns that denote a precise TERM of TIME are put in the Ablative.
 2. Nouns that denote CONTINUANCE of TIME are put in the Ablative.

De ablatione absoluâ.

R E G. XV.

64. * SUBSTANTIVUM

*cum Participio,
quorum Casus a nulla alia
dictione pendet, ponuntur
in Ablativo absoluto; ut,*

** Sole b oriente fugium te-
scbra;*

Opere b peracto ludemus;

The Sun rising, [or, when
the Sun riseth] Dark
flees away.

Our Work being finisht
[or when our work is
nished] we will play.

NOTE. 1. This Ablative is called ABSOLUTE or Independent, because it is not digest'd or determined by any other Word; for if Substantive (which is principally to be regarded) hath a Word that should govern it, or a Verb coming after to which it should be Nominative, then the Rule does not take Place.

NOTE. 2. That Having, Being, or a Word ending in *ing* are ordinary Signs of this Ablative.

NOTE. 3. That (to prevent our mistaking the true Substantive) a Participle perfect in Englished by HAVING, we are carefully to attend whether it is Passive or Dependent. If it is Passive we are to change it into BEING, its true English. If it is Dependent there needs no Change, for HAVING is the proper English of it. The Use of NOTE will appear by the following Examples.

James having said these things *Jacobus hoc locutus abit;* James departed.

James, these things being said, *Jacobus his dictis abit.* James departed.

Having promised a great Reward. *Policitus magnum mercede promisit.* A great Reward being promised. *Magna mercede promissa.*

NOTE. 4. That when there is no Participle express'd in Latin, the *ing* [being] is understood; as, *Mi patro, I being a Roy.* *Saturnus
Saturni regnus.* *Civitate mundum libera,* The State not being yet
liberated.

NOTE. 5. That the Participle may be resolved into *Dum, cum, pro-*
tempore, &c. [While, seeing, when, in, after,] with the Participle in
English or Latin.

Of the Ablative absolute.

R U L E X V.

A SUBSTANTIVE

Participle, whose Case depends upon no other Word, put in the Ablative absolute, as,

The Sun rising, [or, when
the Sun riseth] Dark
flees away.

Our Work being finisht
[or when our work is
nished] we will play.

III. Constructio Vocabulorum Indeclinabilium.

1. Adverbiorum.

1. ADVERBIA quae
dam temporis,
& quantitatis regunt
Genitivum; ut,

Pridie illius b diei;

Ubique b gentium;

Satis est b verborum;

2. Quædam Adverbia
privata regunt Casum
Genitivorum; ut,

Omnium elegantissime
loquitur; [tura];

Utere convenienter b na-

2. Praepositionum.

PRÆPOSITIONES

Ad, apud, ante, &c.
Genitivum regunt; ut,

Ad b patrem;

2. Praepositiones A, ab,
&c. regunt Ablati-
vum; ut;

A b patre;

3. Praepositiones In, sub,
& subter, regunt Ac-
cūativum cum motus ad
significatur; ut,

Eo in b scholam;

Sub b mœnia tendit; Virg.

vidit a super b agmina; Id.

Uicit a subter b festigia
tellis; Id.

At si motus vel quies-
cere significetur, In &
regunt Ablativum, Su-

III. The Construction of
Words Indeclinable.

1. Of Adverbs.

1. SOME Adverbs of
Time, Place and
Quantity govern the Genitive;
as,

The Day before that Day.
Every where.

There's enough of Words.

2. Some Derivative Adverbs
govern the Case of their Pri-
mitives; as,

He speaks the most ele-
gantly of all. [ture.
To live agreeably to Na-

2. Of Praepositiones.

1. THE Praepositions Ad,
apud, ante, &c.
govern the Accusative; as,

To the Father.

2. The Praepositions A, ab,
abs, &c. govern the Ablative;
as,

From the Father.

3. The Praepositions In, sub,
super and subter, govern the
Accusative when Motion to a
Place is signified; as,

I go into the School.

He goes under the Walls.

It fell upon the Troops.

He brings [him] under
the Roof of the House.

¶ But if Motion or Rest in
a Place be signified, In and
Sub govern the Ablative, Su-

per & Subter vel Accusati-	per and Subter either the
vum vel Ablativum ; ut,	accusative or Ablative ; a,
Sedeo vel discorro a in b scibo -	I sit or run up and do
la ;	in the School.
Resculo vel ambulo p sub	I ly or walk under
b umbra ;	Shadow.
Sedens a super b arma; Virg.	Sitting above the Arm
Fronde a super b viridi ; Id.	Upon the green Gras
Vena a subter b cutem disper-	The Veins dispersed
se ; Plin.	der the Skin.
Subter litora ; Catul.	Beneath the Shoar.

¶ The Prepositions with the Cases they govern contained in these Verses :

1. Hæ quantum adsciscunt Casum sibi Praepositus ;
Ad, penes, adversum, cùs, citra, adversus & extra,
Ultra, post, præter, juxta, per, pone, secundum,
Erga, apud, ante, secus, trans, supra, propter & intra,
Quicis addas contra, circum, circa, inter, ob, infra.
2. His sextum poscent ; A, cum, tenuis, abs, ab & absque,
Atque palam, pro, pra, clam, de, e, ex, sine, coram.
3. Sub, super, in, subter, quantum sextumque requirunt.

NOTE, 1. That *Versus* and *Usque* are put after their Cases ; as, *Ital versus*, Towards Italy. *Oceanum usque*, As far as the Ocean. But we have already observed (Page 68) these are properly *Adverb*, *Preposition AD* being understood.

NOTE, 2. That *Tenus* is also put after its Case ; as, *Mansus*, Up to the Chin.

NOTE, 3. That *Tenus* governs the *Genitive Plural*, 1. When the Word wants the *Singular* ; as, *Cumarum tenus*, As far as [the Town] Cumæ. 2. When we speak of things of which we have naturally two ; as, *Crurum tenus*, Up to the Legs.

NOTE, 4. That *A* and *E* are put before *Consonants*, *Ab* and *Ex* before *Vowels* and *Consonants*; *Abs* before *t* and *q*.

NOTE, 5. That *Subter* hath very rarely the *Ablative*, and only among Poets.

NOTE, 6. IN for *Erga*, *contra*, *per*, *supra*, *ad*, &c. govern the *Accusative*, *Amor in patriam*. *Quid ego in te commisi?* *Crescit in dies singulari Imperium Regum in propriis greges*. Horat. *Pisces in cœnam eis*. But IN for *Inter* governs the *Ablative* ; as, *In amicis habere*. Sal.

SUB for *circa* governs the *Accusative* ; as, *Sub cœnam*.

SUPER for *Ultra*, *præter* and *inter* governs the *Accusative* ; as, *Super Garamantias*, Virg. *Super gratiam suam*. Sal. *In sermone super causam patio*. Suer. For *de* it governs the *Ablative* ; as, *Super hac rē nimis*. Cic.

- 71 4. ¶ *Præpositio in compositione eundem* sepe | 4. A Preposition oftentimes
Casum regit quem extra ; | governs the same Case in
ut, | Composition that it does without it ; as,

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 99

Adeamus ^b scholam; Let us go to the School.

Exeamus ^b scola; Let us go out of the School.

Note, That this Rule only takes Place when the Preposition may be dissolved from the Verb, and put before the Case by it self; as, *Alio patrem*. i. e. *Loquor ad patrem*. And even then the Preposition is frequently repeated; as, *Exire a finibus suis*. *Cas.*

3. Interjectionum.

1. INTERJECTIO-

NES O, heu & prob, -
gunt Vocativum, inter-
m Accusativum; ut,

O b formose puer;

Heu b me miserum!

2. Hei & Væ regunt Da-

rum; ut, *ludorum* no

Hei b mibi!

Væ b vobis;

4. Conjunctionum.

1. CONJUNCTIO-

NES Et, ac, at-
e, nec, neque, aut, vel, &

ad am aliae connectunt si-
iles Casus & Modos; ut,

Honora b patrem & G b ma-

trem;

Nec b scribit, & nec b legit;

He neither writes nor reads.

To these add, *Quam, nisi, praterquam, an*, and *Adverbs of Likeness*. The Reason of this Construction is because the Words so coupled depend all upon the same Word, which is express to one of them, and understood to the other.

2. Ut, quo, licet, ne, u-
nam & dummodo Sub-
dictivo Modo fere semper
dharent; ut,

Lego & ut b discam;
& Utinam b saperes;

To these add all Indefinite Words, that is, *Interrogatives*, whether
Pronouns, *Adverbs* or *Conjunctions*, when taken in a doubtful
indefinite Sense, such as, *Quis, uter, quantus, &c. Ubi, quo, unde, &c.*
Quare, quamobrem, num, an, eme, &c. [See Page 65 and 70.] They

3. Of Interjections.

1. THE Interjections O, 72

Heu and Proh, go-
vern the Vocative, and some-
times the Accusative; as;

O fair Boy.

Ah Wretch that I am!

2. Hei and Væ govern the 73

Dative; as,

Ah me!

Wo to you.

4. Of Conjunctions.

1. THE Conjunctions Et, 74

ac, atque, nec, ne-
que, aut, vel, and some
others couple like Cases and

Moods; as,
Honour your Father and
Mother.

He neither writes nor reads.

Et, ac, atque, nec, ne-

que, aut, vel, and some
others couple like Cases and

Moods; as,
Honour your Father and
Mother.

2. Ut, quo, licet, ne, u- 75
nam and dummodo are for
the most part joined with the
Subjunctive Mood; as,

I read that I may learn.

I wish you were wise.

G 2

generally become Indefinites, when another Word comes before them in the Sentence, such as, *Scio*, *nescio*, *video*, *intelligo*, *dubito*, &c. the like; as, *Ubi est frater tuus?* & *Nescio ubi sit.* *As venturus* & *Dubito an venturus sit.*

NE the Adverb of Forbidding requires the Imperative or Subjunctive, *Ne time*, or *Ne timeas.* See Pag. 47.

Dum, *quam*, *quod*, *si*, *in*, *ni*, *nisi*, *etsi*, *etiam si*, *prorsus*, *semper*, *hic*, *siquidem*, *quandoquidem*, &c. are joined sometimes with the Indicative, and sometimes with the Subjunctive.

SYNTAXEOS Synopsis,

Sive

Genuina & maxime necessariae Constructionis Regulae ad quas cetera omnes reducuntur.

AXIOMATA.

I. OMNIS Oratio consistat ex Nominis & Verbo.

II. Omnis Nominativus habet suum Verbum expressum vel suppressum.

III. Omne Verbum Finatum habet suum Nominativum expressum vel suppressum.

IV. Omne Adjективum habet suum Substantivum expressum vel suppressum.

Sex Casuum Constructio.

I. OMNE Verbum Finatum expressum vel suppressum concordat cum Nominativo expresso vel suppresso in Numero & Persona; ut,

A Summary of SYNTAX.

Or

The true and most necessary Rules of Construction to which all the rest are reduced.

First PRINCIPLES.

I. EVERT Speech [or Sententia] consists of a Noun and a Verb.

II. Every Nominative has its Verb express or understood.

III. Every Finite Verb has its own Nominative express or understood.

IV. Every Adjective has its own Substantive express or understood.

The Construction of the Six Cases.

I. EVERT Verb of the Finite Mood express or understood agrees with its Nominative express or understood in Number and Person;

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 103

Puer legit ;
Homines Ajunt ;
Romani [cooperant] festinare ;

II. Omnis Genitivus re-
etur a Substantivo expresso
vel suppresso ; ut,
Liber fratri ;
Est [officium] patris ;

III. Dativus Acquisitionis,
e. cui aliquid acquiritur
adimitur] cuivis Nomi-
aut Verbo expresso vel
suppresso jungitur ; ut,
Dedi Petro ;
Cui dedisti ? [Dedi] Petro ;
Utilis bello ;
Non est [aptus] solvendo ;

IV. Omnis Accusativus re-
etur a Verbo Activo vel
Præpositione expressis - vel
suppressis ; ut,
Amo Deum ;
Ad patrem ;
Abiit [ad] Londinum ;

V. Aut Infinitivo præponitur
pressus vel suppressus ; ut,
Dicit se scribere ;
Licet mibi [me] esse bonum ;

V. Omnis Vocabutus ab-
lute ponitur, addita non-
quam Interjectione O; ut,
O Dave ;
Heus Syre ;

VI. Omnis Ablativus regi-
ta + Præpositione expres-
so vel suppressa ; ut,
A pueru ;
Exultat [pro] gaudio ;

The Boy reads.

They say.

The Romans made haste.

II. Every Genitive is gov-
erned by a Substantive express
or understood ; as,

The Book of my Brother.
It is the Duty of a Father.

III. The Dative of Acqui-
sition [i. e. to which any thing
is acquired, or from which it
is taken] is joined to any Noun
or Verb express or understood ; as,
I gave it to Peter.

To whom did you give it? To
Profitable for War. [Peter]
He is not able to pay.

IV. Every Accusative is go-
verned by an Active Verb, or a
+ Præposition express or under-
stood ; as,

I love God.
To the Father.

He hath gone to London.

Or is put before the Infini-
tive express or understood ; as,
He says that he is writing.
I may be good.

V. Every Vocative is placed
absolutely, the Interjection O
being sometimes added ; as,

O Davus.

Come hither Syrus.

VI. Every Ablative is gov-
erned by a + Præposition express
or understood ; as,

From a Child.

He leaps for Joy.

APPEN.

Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

APPENDIX.

I. OMNE Adjectivum concordat cum Substantivo expresso vel suppresso in Genere, Numero & Casu ; ut,

Bonus vir ;
Triste [negotium s.]

II. Substantiva significativa eandem rem convenient in Casu ; ut,

Dominus Deus ;

III. Omnis Infinitivus regitur a Verbo vel Nominis expressis vel suppressis ; ut,

Cupio discere ;
Dignus amari ;
Populus [capit] mirari ;

I. EVERT Adjective agrees with a Substantive express or understood in Gender, Number and Cases,

A good Man.
A sad thing.

II. Substantives significative the same thing agree in Cases,

The Lord God.

III. Every Infinitive is governed by a Verb or a Noun expressed or understood ; as,

I desire to learn.

Worthy to be loved.

The People wondred.

EXPLANATION.

ALL Construction is either TRUE or APPARENT, or (as Grammarians express it) JUST and FIGURATIVE. TRUE Construction is founded upon the Essential Properties of Words, and is almost the same in all Languages. APPARENT Construction intirely depends upon Custom, which either for Elegance or Dispatch leaves out a great many Words otherwise necessary to make a Sentence perfectly full and Grammatical. The first is comprised in these few Fundamental Rules, and more fully branched out in the Larger Syntax. The other is also interspersed through the Larger Syntax, but distinguished from that which is True by an Asterisk.

The Cases mentioned in the Rules of the Larger Syntax immediately discover the Rules of this Summary to which they respectively belong ; those that are True without any Ellipsis ; those that are Figurative by having their Ellipses supplied as follows, as they are numbered in the Margin.

To RULE II. are reduced Numb. 13, supple negotium. Numb. 14, & 40, sup. de causa, gratia, or in re, negotio. Numb. 15, sup. e numero. Numb. 21, sup. de negotio. Numb. 22, and 23, sup. officium, negotium, &c. Numb. 24, sup. i. Sat taken from the Verb. 2. de causa, &c. Numb. 29, in memoriam, notitiam, verba, &c. Numb. 30, sup. de crimine, pena, &c. Numb. 35, and 36 sup. pro re or pretio eris. Numb. 40, sup. inter negotio and res [fieri] se ad negotia. Numb. 41, sup. res, negotium, &c. Numb. 51, sup. in urbe. Numb. 59, Domi. sup. in adibus. Numb. 65, These Adverbs seem to be taken for Substantive Nouns.

To RULE III. are reduced Numb. 72, sup. Malum est, or they are to be Substantives.

Part III. Chap. II. of Resolution. 163

To RULE IV. belong Numb. 18, 52, and 61, sup. ad. Numb. 33, sup. ad. Numb. 40, i. e. *Est inter mea negotia;* *Reserv* [or *res serv*] *in mea negotia,* &c. Numb. 57, sup. ad or in. Numb. 63, sup. Per. Numb. 6, sup. *sentio, lugeo, &c.*

To RULE VI. belong Numb. 12, sup. *e, ex, or cum,* Numb. 19, sup. Numb. 20, sup. *de, e, ex, cum, &c.* Numb. 21, sup. *a, ab, &c.* Numb. 22, sup. *pro.* Numb. 37, 38, sup. *a, ab, de, e, ex.* Numb. 50, and 54, sup. *Pro, in, a, ab, ex, &c.* Numb. 53, sup. *in or de.* Numb. 56, sup. *in,* Numb. 58, sup. *a, ab, e, ex.* Numb. 61, sup. *in.* Numb. 63, sup. *in or pro.* Numb. 64, sup. *sub, cum, a, ab.*

NOTE, 1. That under *Verbs* must also be comprehended *Participles, Gerunds and Supines,* because the general Signification of *Verbs* is included in them.

NOTE, 2. That, as a Consequence of this, a Learned Grammarians ingeniously supposes that the *Dative* and *Infinitive* are always governed by a *Verb*, and that when they seem to be governed by a *Noun*, the Article *Existens* is understood; as, *Utilis [existens] bello. Pollio presidiis [existens] reis. Dignus [existens] amari.*

NOTE, 3. That the *Vocative* is properly no Part of a Sentence, but the use by which we excite one to hear or execute what we say. Therefore when the *Vocative* is put before the *Imperative*, as frequently happens, the nominative *TU* or *VOS* are understood, and that even tho' these Words are already express in the *Vocative*; as, *Tu Iacobe lege.* i. e. *O tu Iacob, lege.*

NOTE, 4. That the *Vocative* is sufficient to itself, and does non necessitate the *Interjection O.* See *Vossius Lib. 7. Cap. 60.* and *Santius lib. 4. de Ellipsis Verb. Audio & Narro.*

C H A P. II. Of Exposition or Resolution.

EXPOSITION or RESOLUTION is the Unfolding of a Sentence, and placing all the Parts of it, whether express or understood, in their proper Order, that the true Sense and Meaning of it may appear.

A SENTENCE is either *Simple* or *Compound.*

1. A SIMPLE Sentence is that which hath one Finite Verb in it.

2. A COMPOUND Sentence is that which hath two or more such Verbs in it, joined together by some *Couples.*

These COUPLES are of four Sorts, 1. The Relative *QUI.* 2. Some *Comparative* Words, such as, *Tantus, quentus;* *Talis, qualis;* *Tam, cum;* &c. 3. *Indefinite* Words; [see Page 70 and 99] 4. *Conjunctions.*

In a Simple Sentence there are two things to be considered, 1. Its *Essential*, Its *Accidental* Parts.

1. The Essential Parts of a Sentence are a *Nominative* and a *Verb.*

2. The Accidental Parts are of four Kinds. 1. Such as excite Attention, the *Vocative*, and exciting *Particles*; as, *O, en, ecco, heus, &c.* 2. Such serve to introduce a Sentence, or to shew its Dependance upon what was said before; as, *Iam, hactenus, quandoquidem, cum, dum, interea, &c.* 3. Such as limit the general and indefinite Signification either of the *Nominative Verb*, and these are *Substantive Nouns.* 4. Such as qualify and explain

these

204 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

them, viz. *Adjectives, Adverbs, Prepositions with their Cases.* Sometimes a Compound Sentence supplies the Place of these two last Kinds of Words.

II. The ORDER of Words in a Sentence is either *Natural* or *Artificial*.

1. NATURAL Order is when the Words of a Sentence naturally follow one after another in the same Order with the Conceptions of the Mind.

2. ARTIFICIAL Order is when Words are so ranged as to render most agreeable to the Ear; but so as the Sense be not thereby obscured.

III. A Sentence may be resolved from the Artificial into the Natural by the following Rules.

1. Take the *Cative, Exciting and Introductory Words*, where they are.

2. The Nominative.

3. Words limiting or explaining it, i. e. Words agreeing with or governed by it, or by one another successively, (till you come to the Verb,) where they are found.

4. The VERB.

5. Words limiting or explaining it, &c. where they are found, to the end of the Sentence.

6. Supply every where the Words that are understood.

7. If the Sentence is Compound take the Parts of it severally as they stand upon one another, proceeding with each of them as before.

E X A M P L E.

Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tibique persuade esse te quidem mibi carissimum: multo fore cariorum, si talibus monumentis praeceptisque latabere. Cic: Off.

3. Farewell then, my [Son] Cicero, and assure your Self that you are indeed very dear unto me; but shall be much dearer, if you shall take Dilection in such Writings and Instructions.

This Compound Sentence is resolved into these five Simple Sentences.

1. *Igitur, mi [fili] Cicero, [tu] vale, 2. et [tu] persuade tibi te esse quidem carissimum [filium] mibi; 3. sed [tu persuade tibi te] fore cariorum [filii mnihi in] multo [negotio,] 4. si [tu] latabere talibus monumentis, 5. tu latabere talibus] praecepisti.*

NOTE, 1. That *Interrogative Words* stand always first in a Sentence unless a *Preposition* comes before them.

NOTE, 2. That *Negative Words* stand immediately before the *Verb*.

NOTE, 3. That *Relatives* are placed before the Word by which they are governed, unless it is a *Preposition*.

NOTE, 4. That the *Subjunctive Mood* is used in Compound Sentences.

NOTE, 5. That the Parts of a Compound Sentence are separated from one another by these Marks, called INTERPUNCTIONS. 1. These that are smaller, named *Clauses*, by this Mark (,) called a *Comma*. 2. These that are greater, named *Members*, by this (:) called a *Colon*, or this (;) called a *Semicolon*. 3. When a Sentence is thrown in that hath little or no Connection with the rest, it is inclosed within what we call a *Parenthesis*, marked thus, ()

But when the Sentence, whether Simple or Compound, is fully ended, if it be plain *Affirmation* or *Negation*, it is closed with this Mark (.) called a *Point*. If a *Question* is asked, with this Mark (?) called a *Point of Interrogation*. If *Wonder* or some other sudden *Passion* is signified, with this Mark (!) called a *Point of Admiratio[n]*.